



## **Speedstar 2000 Operations Manual**

Reference: InTouch ID 3306025  
Version: J  
Release Date: 06-Nov-2003  
EDMS UID: 274966841  
Produced: 13-Nov-2003 23:12:59  
Owner: AL Engineering-EPC  
Author: AL Engineering-EPC

**Private**



# **Speedstar 2000 Operations Manual**

Reference: InTouch ID 3306025  
Version: J  
Release Date: 06-Nov-2003  
EDMS UID: 274966841  
Published: 13-Nov-2003 23:12:59  
Owner: AL Engineering-EPC  
Author: AL Engineering-EPC

**Private**

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# Legal Information

**Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.**

This work contains the confidential and proprietary trade secrets of Schlumberger and may not be copied or stored in an information retrieval system, transferred, used, distributed, translated or retransmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, in whole or in part, without the express written permission of the copyright owner.

## Trademarks & service marks

"Schlumberger", the Schlumberger logotype, and other words or symbols used to identify the products and services described herein are either trademarks, trade names or service marks of Schlumberger and its licensors, or are the property of their respective owners. These marks may not be copied, imitated or used, in whole or in part, without the express prior written permission of Schlumberger. In addition, covers, page headers, custom graphics, icons, and other design elements may be service marks, trademarks, and/or trade dress of Schlumberger, and may not be copied, imitated, or used, in whole or in part, without the express prior written permission of Schlumberger.

A complete list of Schlumberger marks may be viewed at the Schlumberger Oilfield Services Marks page: <http://www.hub.slb.com/index.cfm?id=id32083>

Marks of Schlumberger include but may not be limited to espWatcher.

| Term | Definition |
|------|------------|
|      |            |

**Private**

[Copyright](http://www.hub.slb.com/index.cfm?id=id32083) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## Document Control

Owner: **AL Engineering-EPC**

Author: **AL Engineering-EPC**

Reviewer: **AL Engineering-EPC**

Approver: **AL Engineering-EPC**

## Contact Information

Name: **AL Engineering-EPC**

## Revision History

| Rev | Effective Date | Description                                   | Prepared by |
|-----|----------------|---|-------------|
| J   | 06-Nov-2003    | Revised startup and troubleshooting chapters. | K. Engel    |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## FOREWORD

This version of the document replaces any other version, published or unpublished. Users should check that the version they are using matches the controlled version published in InTouchSupport.com. Document version information is indicated on the document cover page. To confirm the correct version is in use, the user shall check the reference, version, release date, EDMS UID, and production date and time match those on the controlled version of the document. Refer to the document control page for the document revision history.

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# Table of Contents

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <b>Foreword</b>  | <b>v</b> |
| <b>1 Product Description</b>                               |          |
| 1.1 Human/Machine Interface (HMI)                          | 1- 4     |
| 1.2 The Variable Speed Drive (VSD)                         | 1- 5     |
| <b>2 QHSE</b>  |          |
| 2.1 Installation safety precautions                        | 2- 1     |
| 2.2 Operating safety precautions                           | 2- 3     |
| <b>3 Inspection/Storage/Disposal</b>                       |          |
| 3.1 Inspection of the new unit                             | 3- 1     |
| 3.2 Storage  | 3- 1     |
| 3.3 Disposal   | 3- 1     |
| <b>4 Specifications</b>                                    |          |
| 4.1 480-volt NEMA Type 3R Standard Enclosure Ratings       | 4- 1     |
| 4.2 480-volt NEMA Type 1 Standard Enclosure Ratings        | 4- 3     |
| 4.3 Enclosure Dimensional Data                             | 4- 5     |
| 4.4 Operating Specifications                               | 4- 8     |
| <b>5 Wiring</b>  |          |
| 5.1 Connection Block Diagrams                              | 5- 1     |
| 5.2 Selection of Wiring Equipment and Standard Cable Sizes | 5- 2     |
| 5.3 Grounding  | 5- 4     |
| 5.4 Motor selection  | 5- 5     |
| 5.5 Wiring Considerations for Mechanical Equipment         | 5- 6     |
| 5.6 Interconnection Wiring                                 | 5- 6     |
| <b>6 Operator Interface</b>                                |          |
| 6.1 Introduction   | 6- 1     |
| 6.2 Display mode   | 6- 3     |
| 6.3 Keypad   | 6- 5     |
| 6.4 Commissioning/Recommissioning                          | 6- 7     |
| 6.5 Passwords  | 6- 8     |
| 6.6 Date/time  | 6- 9     |
| 6.7 Speed, Current, or Pressure Control Mode               | 6- 9     |
| 6.8 Ramp rates   | 6-12     |
| 6.9 Analog Inputs  | 6-14     |
| 6.10 Digital Auxiliary Inputs                              | 6-15     |
| 6.11 Output Relays   | 6-17     |
| 6.12 Timers  | 6-18     |

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

|      |   |      |
|------|---|------|
| 6.13 | Jump Frequencies  | 6-21 |
| 6.14 | Proportional/Integral/Derivative (PID) Control  | 6-21 |
| 6.15 | Data Log/History Log/Configuration  | 6-23 |
| 6.16 | Printing  | 6-24 |
| 6.17 | Stop Mode   | 6-24 |
| 6.18 | Internal Temperature  | 6-25 |
| 6.19 | Direct access   | 6-25 |
| 6.20 | Motor/VSD Current Measurement Calibration   | 6-25 |
| 6.21 | Tracking Underload  | 6-26 |
| 6.22 | Graph Printing  | 6-27 |
| 6.23 | Catch a Spinning Motor  | 6-28 |
| 6.24 | Base Frequency Voltage Select   | 6-29 |
| 6.25 | Start Hertz   | 6-29 |
| 6.26 | Start-Up Voltage Boost  | 6-29 |
| 6.27 | Volts-per-Hertz Patterns and Vector Control   | 6-30 |
| 6.28 | Acceleration Rate   | 6-30 |
| 6.29 | Deceleration Rate   | 6-30 |
| 6.30 | Rocking Starts  | 6-31 |
| 6.31 | Forced Frequencies  | 6-31 |
| 6.32 | VSD Service Routines  | 6-32 |
| <br> |   |      |
| 7    | <b>Installation</b>   |      |
| 7.1  | Confirmation of Wiring  | 7- 1 |
| 7.2  | HMI Battery   | 7- 2 |
| 7.3  | Start-Up Test   | 7- 3 |
| <br> |   |      |
| 8    | <b>Startup and Commissioning</b>  |      |
| 8.1  | Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                 | 8- 1 |
| 8.2  | Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)          | 8- 3 |
| 8.3  | Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)        | 8- 9 |
| 8.4  | Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA) | 8-10 |
| 8.5  | Commissioning Procedures  | 8-17 |
| <br> |   |      |
| 9    | <b>Optional and Combinable Equipment</b>  |      |
| 9.1  | SCADA Equipment   | 9- 1 |
| 9.2  | SCADA Equipment Installation  | 9-17 |
| 9.3  | SCADA Equipment Operation   | 9-18 |
| 9.4  | SCADA Equipment Commissioning   | 9-18 |
| 9.5  | SCADA Equipment Maintenance   | 9-19 |
| 9.6  | SCADA Equipment Troubleshooting   | 9-19 |
| <br> |   |      |
| 10   | <b>Maintenance</b>  |      |

|      |                                |       |
|------|--------------------------------|-------|
| 10.1 | Periodic Inspection            | 10- 1 |
| 10.2 | Requesting Maintenance Support | 10- 3 |
| 10.3 | Component Service Life         | 10- 3 |
| 10.4 | Explanation of VSD Resets      | 10- 4 |
| 10.5 | Superuser Resets               | 10- 5 |

## 11 Troubleshooting

|      |  |       |
|------|--|-------|
| 11.1 | Required Troubleshooting Equipment and Tools   | 11- 1 |
| 11.2 | Capturing Drive Data   | 11- 2 |
| 11.3 | Pre-Powerup Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                           | 11- 2 |
| 11.4 | Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)          | 11- 4 |
| 11.5 | Pre-Powerup Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)                  | 11-20 |
| 11.6 | Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA) | 11-22 |
| 11.7 | Common Fault Displays  | 11-41 |
| 11.8 | Known Troubleshooting Topics   | 11-45 |

## Appendices

### A HMI Menus

|     |                 |      |
|-----|-----------------|------|
| A.1 | HMI Menus Index | A-37 |
|-----|-----------------|------|

### B Electrical Drawings

### C Reference Material

|     |   |      |
|-----|---|------|
| C.1 | Harmonics Concerns with VSDs            | C- 1 |
| C.2 | HMI Software Version 2.06 Release Notes | C- 4 |
| C.3 | ROM Versions and History                | C- 7 |
| C.4 | Problem Information Sheet               | C- 8 |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## Product Description

|            |                                       |       |             |
|------------|---------------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| <b>1.1</b> | <b>Human/Machine Interface (HMI)</b>  | <hr/> | <b>1- 4</b> |
| <b>1.2</b> | <b>The Variable Speed Drive (VSD)</b> | <hr/> | <b>1- 5</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 1

## PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

The Speedstar 2000 Variable Speed Drive (VSD) provides surface control for electrical submersible pump (ESP) applications, horizontal pumping systems (HPS) applications, and progressing cavity pumping systems (PCP). The enclosure for the VSD is a NEMA-rated cabinet which contains: a human/machine interface (HMI) and the power converter (Toshiba G3, the actual variable-speed drive), as well as other associated power componentry such as control power transformers, circuit breakers, fuses, magnetic contactor, Transient Voltage Surge Suppressor (TVSS), etc. Several configurations are available with respect to components mounted on the exterior of the cabinet, such as a heat exchanger, input power junction box, etc. Refer to Chapter 5 Wiring for a simplified block diagram of the Speedstar 2000 and to [Figure 1-2 Speedstar 2000–Major Components \(interior of typical 66 to 200 kVA shown\)](#) for a photo of how its components are interconnected.

Refer to [Figure 1-1 Speedstar 2000–Major Components \(exterior\)](#) for an exterior photo of a typical Speedstar 2000 VSD.

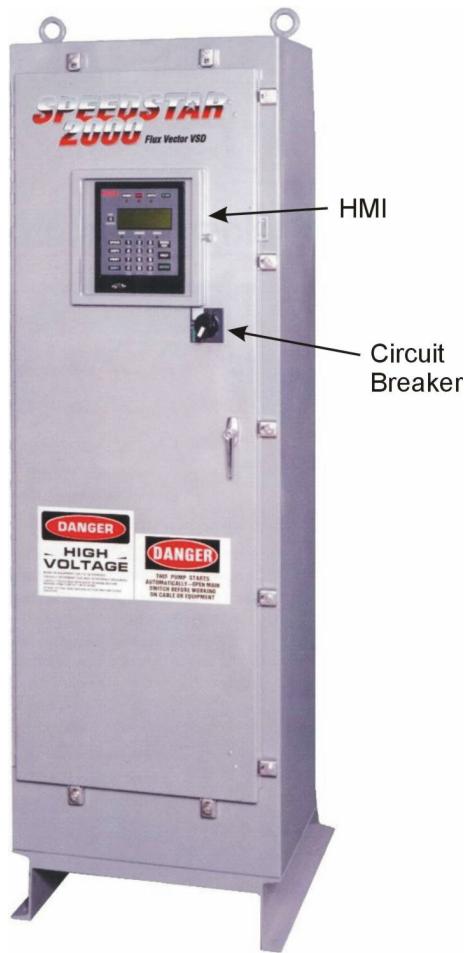
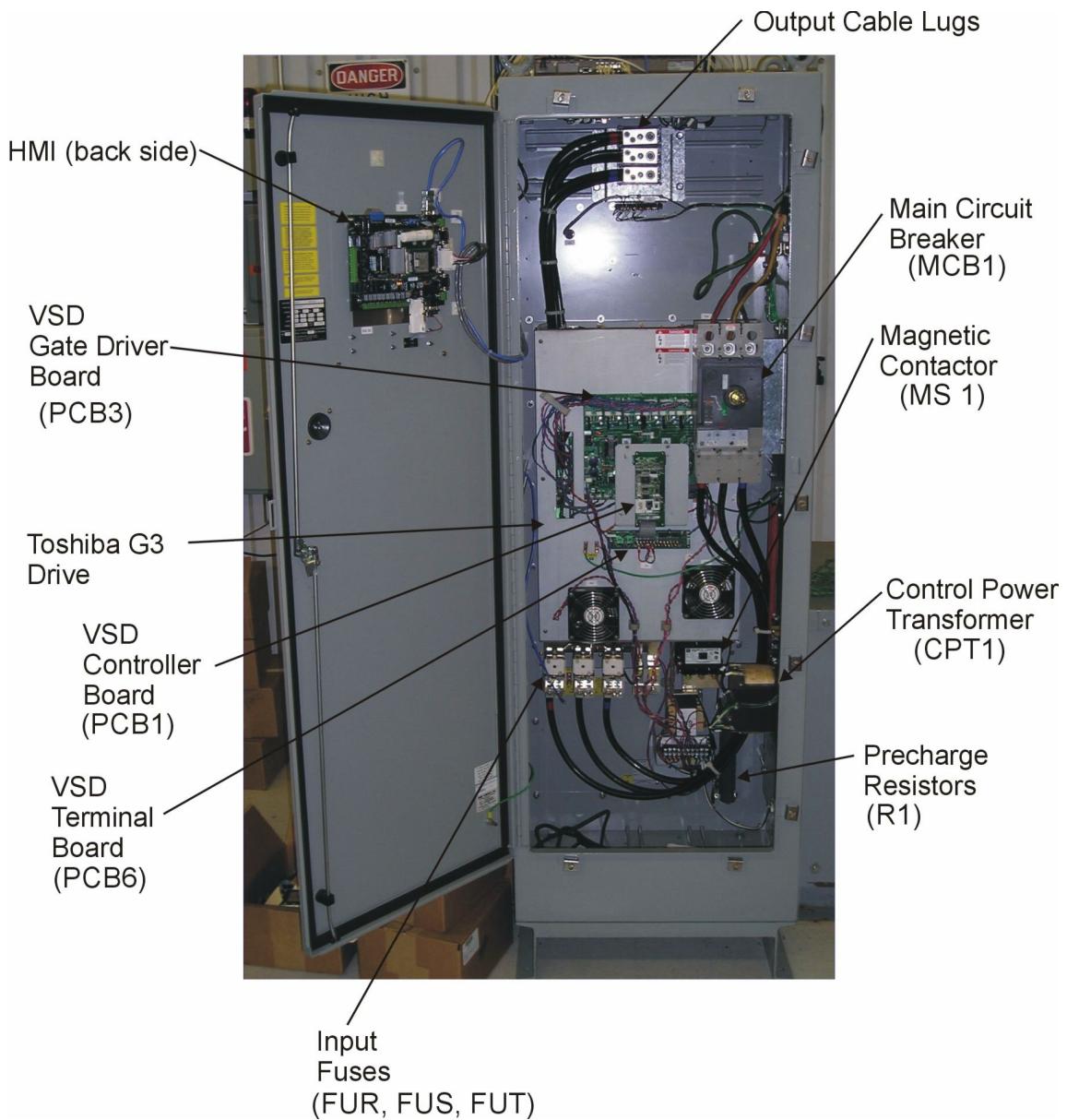


Figure 1-1: Speedstar 2000—Major Components (exterior)



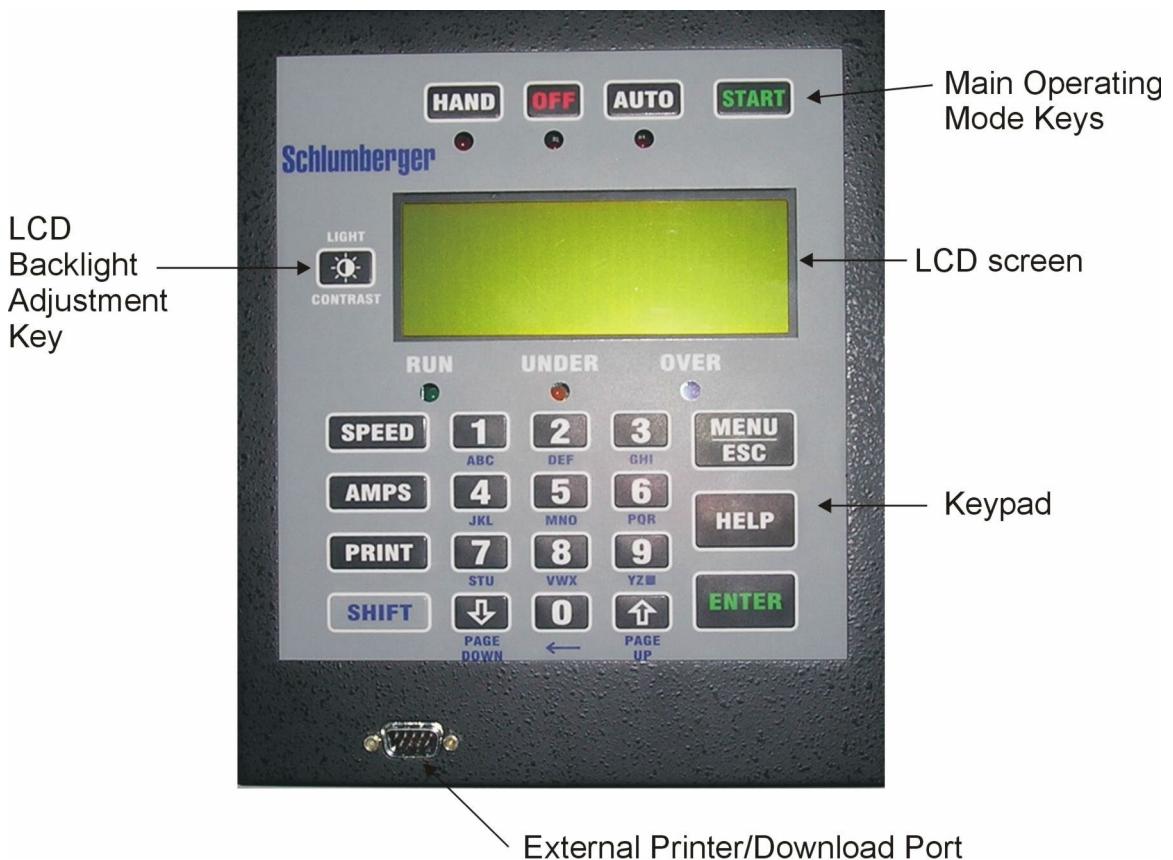
**Figure 1-2: Speedstar 2000—Major Components (interior of typical 66 to 200 kVA shown)**

External to the Speedstar 2000, various optional and combinable equipment may be installed at the wellsite. Since this equipment is optional and application dependent, it is not within the scope of this manual to discuss function and operation of that equipment, beyond how it connects to the Speedstar 2000 system. Since any communications equipment, such as SCADA systems can be used to communicate with (send commands/acquire data) the VSD, some very basic connection and communication instructions and troubleshooting procedures are included in [9 Optional and Combinable Equipment \(p. 9- 1 \).](#)

## 1.1

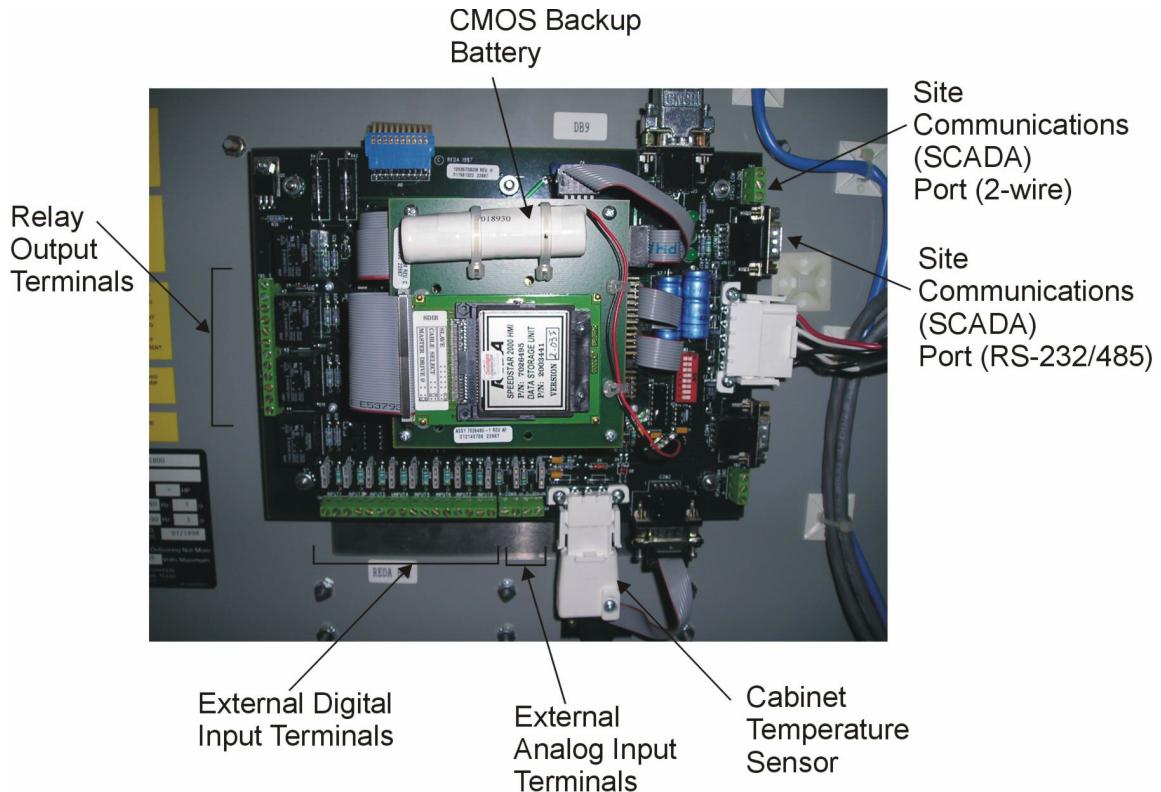
## Human/Machine Interface (HMI)

The HMI provides an external (outside the drive enclosure) status and control center to display and edit current drive settings and parameters and/or shut down or start up the drive. The HMI features an integrated LCD screen and multi-function keypad for user input. Refer to [Figure 1-3 The HMI \(outside the VSD cabinet\)](#) for a photo of the external features of the HMI. Detailed function of the display, menus, and keypad is provided in a later chapter of this manual.



**Figure 1-3: The HMI (outside the VSD cabinet)**

Interior features (inside the drive enclosure) of the HMI are also very important to communication and control of the VSD. The HMI also offers I/O points for other inputs to the controller such as site (SCADA) communications, analog inputs from external sensors or devices, and digital inputs from external sensors. Refer to [Figure 1-4 The HMI \(inside the VSD cabinet\)](#) for a photo of the internal features of the HMI. Detailed function and connection to the SCADA port(s), analog inputs, and digital inputs are described in a later chapter.

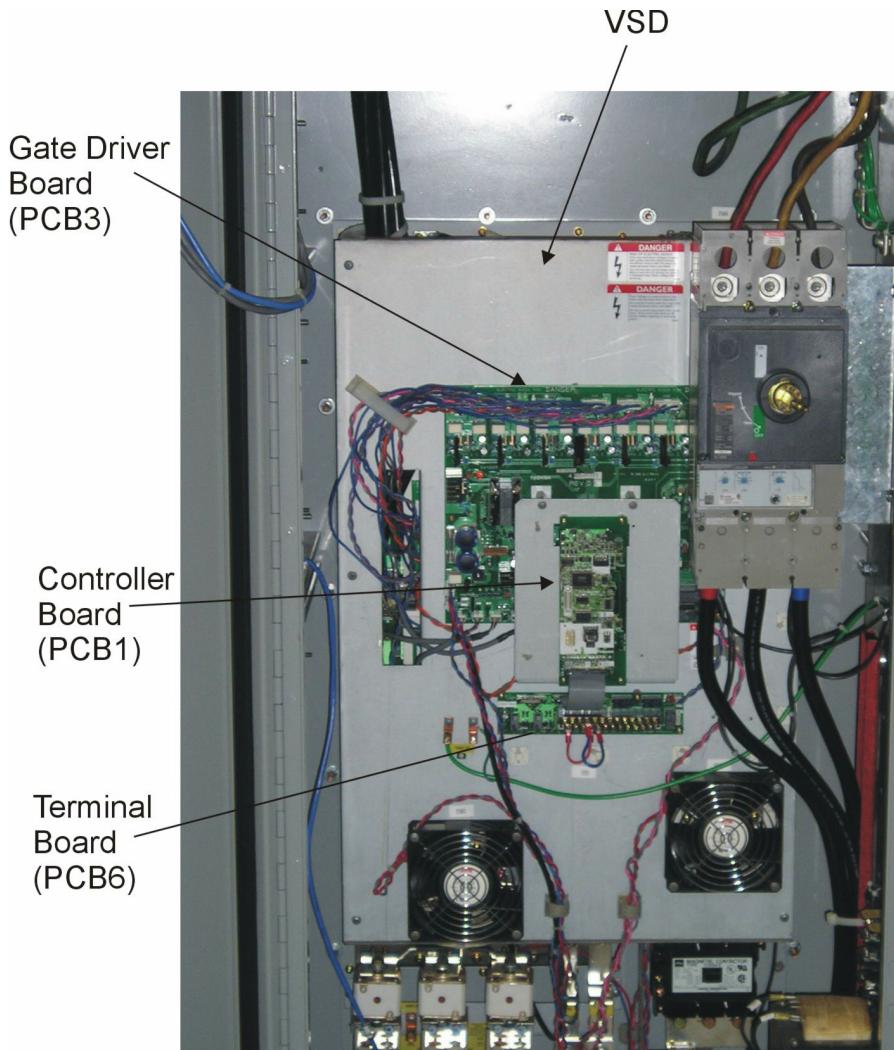


**Figure 1-4: The HMI (inside the VSD cabinet)**

1.2

## The Variable Speed Drive (VSD)

Because of the many functions that the VSD performs (converter, inverter) and the fact that the Speedstar 2000 currently contains a Toshiba G3 Transistor Inverter, many names, such as the G3, the drive, the inverter, etc. have been used to describe the VSD. In this publication, the variable speed drive and all of the terms used for it, will simply be referred to as the VSD. Refer to [Figure 1-5 VSD Major Components](#) for a photo of the VSD and its major components.



**Figure 1-5: VSD Major Components.** Numbers in parentheses denote reference designators on the interconnect diagrams.

## QHSE

|     |                                 |       |      |
|-----|---------------------------------|-------|------|
| 2.1 | Installation safety precautions | _____ | 2- 1 |
| 2.2 | Operating safety precautions    | _____ | 2- 3 |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

2

## QHSE

The following safety precautions should be followed when installing, operating, or maintaining a Schlumberger variable speed drive.

2.1

### Installation safety precautions

1. Install the drive in a secure and upright position in a well ventilated location. NEMA 3R enclosures are used in outdoor applications. If mounted in direct sun, a temperature derating factor may be required. Temperature should range from -4 degF (20 degC) to 122 degF (50 degC).
2. For NEMA 3R units, allow a clearance space of 8 in (20 cm) for the top and 6 in (10 cm) on both sides. Do not obstruct any of the ventilation openings. Rear ventilation requires free air flow for proper cooling. Rear access is required for fan maintenance. NEMA 1 units can be mounted directly to a wall and no side clearance is required.
3. Avoid installation in areas where extreme vibration, extreme heat, or sources of electrical noise are present.
4. Adequate working space should be provided for adjustment, inspection, and maintenance of the drive.
5. Adequate lighting should be available for troubleshooting and maintenance.
6. A noncombustible insulating floor or mat should be provided in the area immediately surrounding the electrical system where maintenance is required.
7. Always ground the unit properly to prevent electrical shock and to help reduce electrical noise.



Potential Severity: Serious  
Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel  
Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

A separate ground cable should be run inside the conduit with the input, output, and control power cables (Refer to *Grounding* in the Wiring chapter of this manual). **The metal of conduit is not an acceptable ground.**

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

8. Use lockout/tagout procedures before connecting three phase power of the correct voltage to input terminals (L1, L2, L3 [R, S, T] for a 6-pulse drive; L1, L2, L3 [R, S, T] and L4, L5, L6 [R2, S2, T2] for a 12-pulse drive) and connect three-phase power from output terminals T1, T2, T3 (U, V, W) to a motor of the correct voltage and type for the application. Size the conductors in accordance with *Selection of Main Circuit Wiring Equipment and Standard Cable Sizes* located in the Wiring chapter of this manual.
9. If conductors of a smaller than recommended size are used in parallel to share current, then the conductors should be kept together in sets i.e., U1, V1, W1 in one conduit and U2, V2, W2 in another. National and local electrical codes should be checked for possible cable derating factors if more than three power conductors are run in the same conduit or through the same hole in the cabinet or through a non-metallic flange or bulkhead. Temperatures can become excessive if phase U1, U2, and/or U3 cables are in proximity to each other (eddy current field effect).
10. Use separate metal conduits for routing the input power, output power, and control circuits.
11. Installation of drive systems should conform to the National Electrical Code, regulations of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, and all national, regional, or industry codes and standards when installed in the United States. Other codes may apply if installed outside of the US.
12. Do not connect control circuit terminal block return connections marked CC to VSD earth ground terminals marked GND(E). See *Standard Connection Diagrams* and *Terminal Connections and Functions* located in the Wiring chapter of this manual.
- 13.



Potential Severity: Serious  
 Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

---

If a secondary Magnetic Contactor (MC) is used between the VSD output and the load, it should be interlocked so that the ST-CC terminals (on the VSD terminal board) are disconnected before the output contactor is opened. If the output contactor is used for bypass operation, it must also be interlocked so that commercial power is never applied to the drive output terminals (U,V,W).

- 14.



Potential Severity: Serious  
 Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

Power factor improvement capacitors or surge absorbers must not be installed on the VSD's output.

15. Never install any type of starter(s) or contactor(s) on the drive output to switch motor loads instantaneously.
16. Only qualified personnel should install this equipment.

## 2.2

## Operating safety precautions

1. Do not power up the VSD until this entire operation manual is reviewed.
2. The input voltage must be within +/-10% of the specified input voltage. Voltages outside of this permissible tolerance range may cause internal protection devices to turn ON or can cause damage to the unit. Also, the input frequency should be within +/-3 Hz of the specified input frequency.
3. Proper coordination of the motor and VSD is required. For submersible and surface motor applications, consult with Schlumberger when utilizing this VSD for a new application.
4. This VSD is designed to operate both standard NEMA B and Schlumberger submersible pump motors. Consult the factory before using the VSD for special applications such as an explosion-proof motor or one with a repetitive type piston load.
5. Do not touch any internal part with power applied to the VSD; first remove the power supply from the drive and wait until charge LED is no longer illuminated. Charged capacitors can present a hazard even if source power is removed.
- 6.



Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

*Do not operate this VSD with its cabinet door open.*

7. Do not apply commercial power to the output terminals T1 (U), T2 (V), or T3 (W) even if the VSD source power is off. Disconnect the VSD from the motor before using a megger or applying bypass voltage to the motor.

### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

8. Interface problems can occur when this drive is used in conjunction with some types of process controllers. Signal isolation may be required to prevent controller and/or drive malfunction (contact Schlumberger or the process controller manufacturer for additional information about compatibility and signal isolation).
9. Do not open and then reclose a secondary magnetic contactor (MC) between the drive and the load unless the drive is OFF (output frequency has dropped to zero) and the motor is not rotating. Abrupt reapplication of the load while the drive is on or while the motor is rotating can cause drive damage.
10. Use caution when setting output frequency. Overspeeding a motor can decrease its torque-developing capability and can result in damage to the motor and/or driven equipment.
11. Use caution when setting the acceleration and deceleration time. Unnecessarily short time settings can cause tripping of the drive and mechanical stress to loads.
12. Only qualified personnel should have access to the adjustments and operation of this equipment. They should be familiar with the drive operating instructions and with the machinery being driven.
13. Only properly trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to service this equipment.
14. Follow all warnings and precautions. Do not exceed equipment ratings.

## Inspection/Storage/Disposal

|            |                                   |       |             |
|------------|-----------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| <b>3.1</b> | <b>Inspection of the new unit</b> | <hr/> | <b>3- 1</b> |
| <b>3.2</b> | <b>Storage</b>                    | <hr/> | <b>3- 1</b> |
| <b>3.3</b> | <b>Disposal</b>                   | <hr/> | <b>3- 1</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

3

## INSPECTION/STORAGE/DISPOSAL

This chapter describes how to inspect a VSD when it first arrives at the wellsite or jobsite, how to store the unit if it will not be immediately connected and put in service, and how to dispose of any old or previously installed electrical/electronic drive equipment.

3.1

### Inspection of the new unit

1. Upon receipt of the drive, a thorough visual inspection for damage should be made after uncrating.
2. Check the unit for loose, broken, bent, or otherwise damaged parts due to shipping.
3. Check to see that the rated capacity and the model number specified on the nameplate conform to the order specifications.

3.2

### Storage

1. Store the unit and any optional equipment in a clean, dry, and well-ventilated location; preferably in the original carton if the VSD will not be used immediately after purchase.
2. Avoid storage in locations with high humidity and dust.
3. Storage at temperatures between -20 degC (-4 degF) and 65 degC (145 degF) are permissible.

3.3

### Disposal

Please contact your local environmental agency for details on proper disposal of electrical components and packaging in your particular area.



|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Potential Severity: | Major  |
| Potential Loss:     | Personnel  |
| Hazard Category:    | electrical, explosives, fire flammable, toxic corrosive hazardous substances |

Never dispose of electrical components by incineration.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## Specifications

|            |   |       |             |
|------------|---|-------|-------------|
| <b>4.1</b> | <b>480-volt NEMA Type 3R Standard Enclosure Ratings</b> | <hr/> | <b>4- 1</b> |
| <b>4.2</b> | <b>480-volt NEMA Type 1 Standard Enclosure Ratings</b>  | <hr/> | <b>4- 3</b> |
| <b>4.3</b> | <b>Enclosure Dimensional Data</b>                       | <hr/> | <b>4- 5</b> |
| <b>4.4</b> | <b>Operating Specifications</b>                         | <hr/> | <b>4- 8</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 4 SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter contains operating and dimensional specifications for Speedstar 2000 variable speed drives in NEMA 3R and NEMA 1 enclosures. Tabulated dimensional data refers to the dimensions shown on accompanying figures.

### 4.1 480-volt NEMA Type 3R Standard Enclosure Ratings

Table 4-1: NEMA 3R Enclosure 6-PULSE SPEEDSTAR 2000 VSD

| KVA @ 480 Volts | KVA @380 Volts | Cont. Output Amps | Part Number | Height (in [mm]) | Width (in [mm]) | Depth (in [mm]) | Weight (lbm [kg]) |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 66              | 52             | 79                | 7026644     | 78 [1981]        | 25 [635]        | 30.3 [770]      | 800 [363]         |
| 83              | 66             | 100               | 7026651     | 78 [1981]        | 25 [635]        | 30.3 [770]      | 800 [386]         |
| 111             | 88             | 133               | 7026669     | 78 [1981]        | 25 [635]        | 30.3 [770]      | 900 [408]         |
| 130             | 103            | 156               | 7026677     | 78 [1981]        | 35 [889]        | 30.3 [770]      | 1000 [454]        |
| 163             | 129            | 196               | 7026685     | 78 [1981]        | 35 [889]        | 30.3 [770]      | 1100 [499]        |
| 200             | 158            | 241               | 7026537     | 78 [1981]        | 35 [889]        | 30.3 [770]      | 1100 [499]        |
| 260             | 206            | 313               | 7026693     | 78 [1981]        | 47 [1194]       | 39 [991]        | 1300 [590]        |
| 325             | 257            | 391               | 7026594     | 78 [1981]        | 47 [1194]       | 39 [991]        | 1500 [681]        |
| 390             | 309            | 469               | 7026545     | 78 [1981]        | 47 [1194]       | 39 [991]        | 1700 [771]        |
| 454             | 359            | 546               | 7026602     | 78 [1981]        | 47 [1194]       | 39 [991]        | 1900 [862]        |
| 518             | 410            | 624               | 7026610     | 78 [1981]        | 98 [2489]       | 44 [1123]       | 2300 [1044]       |
| 600             | 475            | 722               | 7026628     | 78 [1981]        | 98 [2489]       | 44 [1123]       | 2400 [1089]       |
| 700             | 554            | 843               | 7026636     | 78 [1981]        | 98 [2489]       | 44 [1123]       | 2500 [1134]       |

| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm<br>[kg]) |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 815                   | 645                  | 981                     | 7026552        | 78 [1981]           | 98 [2489]          | 44 [1123]          | 2600 [1180]             |
| 932                   | 738                  | 1122                    | 7026560        | 78 [1981]           | 118 [2997]         | 44 [1123]          | 2800 [1270]             |
| 1000                  | 792                  | 1203                    | 7026578        | 78 [1981]           | 118 [2997]         | 44 [1123]          | 2900 [1316]             |
| 1200                  | 950                  | 1445                    | 7026586        | 78 [1981]           | 118 [2997]         | 44 [1123]          | 3000 [1361]             |

**Table 4-2: NEMA 3 Enclosure 12-Pulse Speedstar 2000 VSD**

| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm<br>[kg]) |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 66                    | 52                   | 79                      | 7013907        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 800 [363]               |
| 83                    | 66                   | 100                     | 7013915        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 850 [386]               |
| 111                   | 88                   | 133                     | 7013923        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 900 [408]               |
| 130                   | 103                  | 156                     | 7013931        | 78 [1981]           | 35 [889]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1000 [454]              |
| 163                   | 129                  | 196                     | 7013949        | 78 [1981]           | 35 [889]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]              |
| 200                   | 158                  | 241                     | 7013956        | 78 [1981]           | 35 [889]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]              |
| 260                   | 206                  | 313                     | 7013964        | 78 [1981]           | 47 [1194]          | 39 [991]           | 1300 [590]              |
| 325                   | 257                  | 391                     | 7013972        | 78 [1981]           | 47 [1194]          | 39 [991]           | 1500 [681]              |
| 390                   | 309                  | 469                     | 7013980        | 78 [1981]           | 47 [1194]          | 39 [991]           | 1700 [771]              |
| 454                   | 359                  | 546                     | 7013998        | 78 [1981]           | 47 [1194]          | 39 [991]           | 1900 [862]              |
| 518                   | 410                  | 624                     | 7014004        | 78 [1981]           | 98 [2489]          | 44 [1123]          | 2300 [1044]             |
| 600                   | 475                  | 722                     | 7014012        | 78 [1981]           | 98 [2489]          | 44 [1123]          | 2400 [1089]             |
| 700                   | 554                  | 843                     | 7014020        | 78 [1981]           | 98 [2489]          | 44 [1123]          | 2500 [1134]             |
| 815                   | 645                  | 981                     | 7014038        | 78 [1981]           | 98 [2489]          | 44 [1123]          | 2600 [1180]             |
| 932                   | 738                  | 1122                    | 7014046        | 78 [1981]           | 118 [2997]         | 44 [1123]          | 2800 [1270]             |

| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm<br>[kg]) |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1000                  | 792                  | 1203                    | 7014053        | 78 [1981]           | 118<br>[2997]      | 44 [1123]          | 2900<br>[1316]          |
| 1200                  | 950                  | 1445                    | 7014061        | 78 [1981]           | 118<br>[2997]      | 44 [1123]          | 3000<br>[1361]          |

## 4.2 480-volt NEMA Type 1 Standard Enclosure Ratings

Table 4-3: NEMA 1 Enclosure 6 —PULSE SPEEDSTAR 2000 VSD

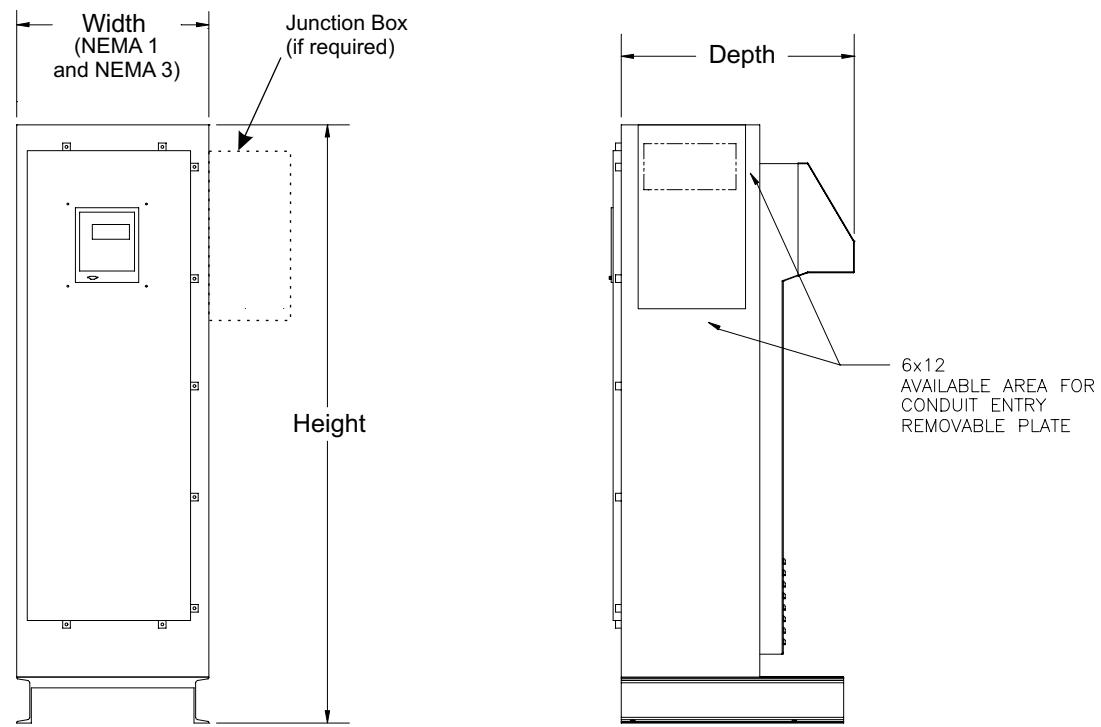
| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@ 380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm<br>[kg]) |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 66                    | 52                    | 79                      | 7014079        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 800 [363]               |
| 83                    | 66                    | 100                     | 7014087        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 850 [386]               |
| 111                   | 88                    | 133                     | 7014095        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 900 [408]               |
| 130                   | 103                   | 156                     | 7014103        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1000 [454]              |
| 163                   | 129                   | 196                     | 7014111        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]              |
| 200                   | 158                   | 241                     | 7014129        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]              |
| 260                   | 206                   | 313                     | 7014137        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1300 [590]              |
| 325                   | 257                   | 391                     | 7014145        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1500 [681]              |
| 390                   | 309                   | 469                     | 7014152        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1700 [771]              |
| 454                   | 359                   | 546                     | 7014160        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1900 [862]              |
| 518                   | 410                   | 624                     | 7014178        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2300 [1044]             |
| 600                   | 475                   | 722                     | 7014186        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2400 [1089]             |
| 700                   | 554                   | 843                     | 7014194        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2500 [1134]             |
| 815                   | 645                   | 981                     | 7014202        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2600 [1180]             |
| 932                   | 738                   | 1122                    | 7014210        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 2800 [1270]             |

| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@ 380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm<br>[kg]) |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1000                  | 792                   | 1203                    | 7014228        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 2900 [1316]             |
| 1200                  | 950                   | 1445                    | 7014236        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 3000 [1361]             |

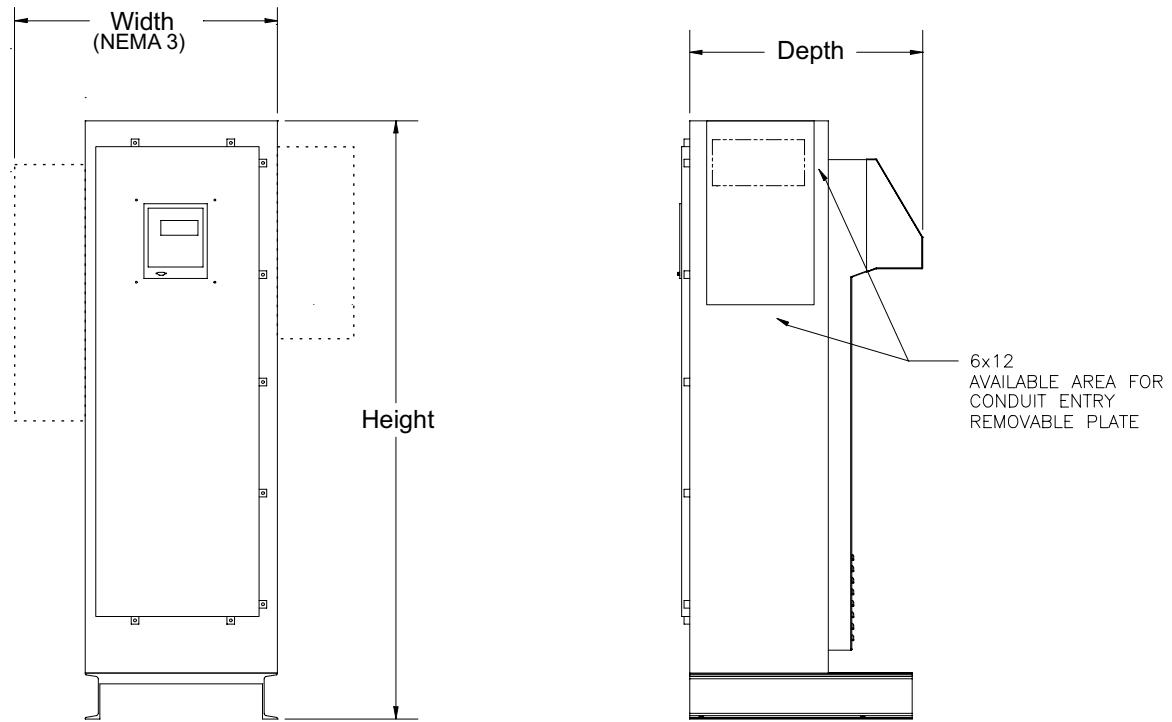
**Table 4-4: NEMA 1 Enclosure 12-Pulse Speedstar 2000 VSD**

| KVA<br>@ 480<br>Volts | KVA<br>@ 380<br>Volts | Cont.<br>Output<br>Amps | Part<br>Number | Height<br>(in [mm]) | Width<br>(in [mm]) | Depth<br>(in [mm]) | Weight<br>(lbm [kg]) |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 66                    | 52                    | 79                      | 7014244        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 800 [363]            |
| 83                    | 66                    | 100                     | 7014251        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 850 [386]            |
| 111                   | 88                    | 133                     | 7014269        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 900 [408]            |
| 130                   | 103                   | 156                     | 7014277        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1000 [454]           |
| 163                   | 129                   | 196                     | 7014285        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]           |
| 200                   | 158                   | 241                     | 7014293        | 78 [1981]           | 25 [635]           | 30.3 [770]         | 1100 [499]           |
| 260                   | 206                   | 313                     | 7014301        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1300 [590]           |
| 325                   | 257                   | 391                     | 7014319        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1500 [681]           |
| 390                   | 309                   | 469                     | 7014327        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1700 [771]           |
| 454                   | 359                   | 546                     | 7014335        | 78 [1981]           | 37 [941]           | 39 [991]           | 1900 [862]           |
| 518                   | 410                   | 624                     | 7014343        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2300 [1044]          |
| 600                   | 475                   | 722                     | 7014350        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2400 [1089]          |
| 700                   | 554                   | 843                     | 7014368        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2500 [1134]          |
| 815                   | 645                   | 981                     | 7014376        | 78 [1981]           | 72 [1829]          | 44 [1123]          | 2600 [1180]          |
| 932                   | 738                   | 1122                    | 7014384        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 2800 [1270]          |
| 1000                  | 792                   | 1203                    | 7014392        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 2900 [1316]          |
| 1200                  | 950                   | 1445                    | 7014400        | 78 [1981]           | 84 [2134]          | 44 [1123]          | 3000 [1361]          |

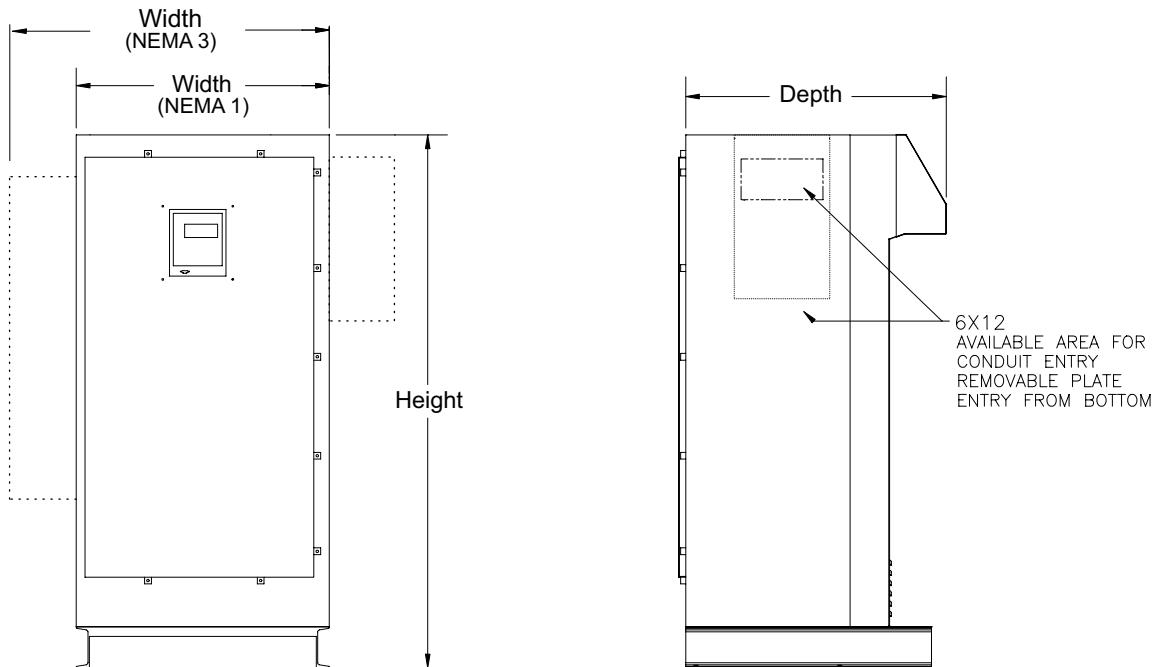
## 4.3

**Enclosure Dimensional Data****Figure 4-1: 66 kVA to 111 kVA NEMA 1 and 3 and 66 kVA to 200 kVA NEMA**

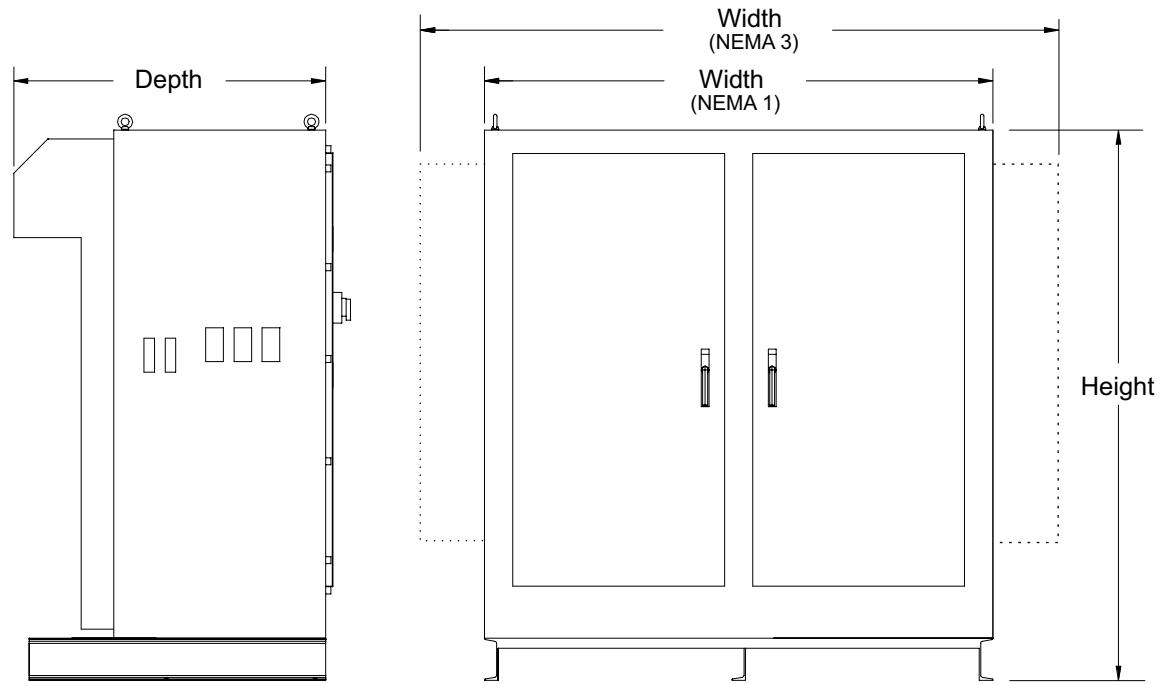
**1 Enclosure Dimensions.** The tabulated figure above corresponds to height, width, and depth listed in dimension tables.



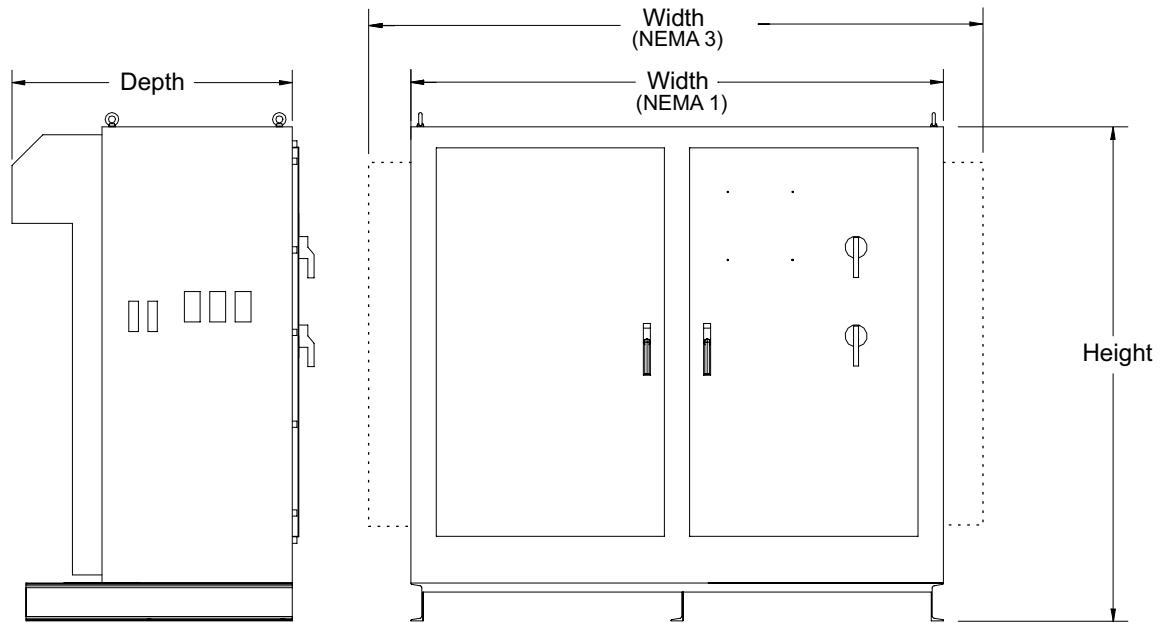
**Figure 4-2: 130 kVA to 200 kVA NEMA 3 Enclosure Dimensions.** The tabulated figure above corresponds to height, width, and depth listed in dimension tables.



**Figure 4-3: 260 kVA to 454 kVA NEMA 3 and 260 kVA to 454 kVA NEMA 1 Enclosure Dimensions..** The tabulated figure above corresponds to height, width, and depth listed in dimension tables.



**Figure 4-4: 518 kVA to 815 kVA NEMA 3 and NEMA 1 Enclosure Dimensions.. The tabulated figure above corresponds to height, width, and depth listed in dimension tables.**



**Figure 4-5: 932 kVA to 1200 kVA NEMA 3 and NEMA 1 Enclosure Dimensions.. The tabulated figure above corresponds to height, width, and depth listed in dimension tables.**

## 4.4 Operating Specifications

The following table lists operating specifications and ranges for the entire range of Speedstar 2000 variable speed drives.

**Table 4-5: Speedstar 2000 Operating Specifications**

| Item                                |  | Standard Specifications   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Principal Control Parameters</b> | Control System                             | Flux vector control PWM   |
|                                     | Input Voltage Supply                       | 380/415/480 volts, 50/60 Hz +/-10% tolerance  |
|                                     | Output Voltage Regulation                  | Same as power line  |
|                                     | Frequency Setting                          | 0.01 to 120 Hz output (10 to 90 Hz default setting) with 0.01 Hz resolution. Input frequency tolerance +/-5%.   |
|                                     | Carrier frequency                          | Auto-adjusted between 0.5 and 3 kHz (default is 2.2 kHz. Anything greater than 2.2 kHz is derated 14%).   |
|                                     | Transistor type                            | Insulated Gate Bipolar (IGBT)   |
|                                     | Inverter Efficiency                        | 98%   |
|                                     | Power Factor                               | 96% at all loads and speeds   |
|                                     | Dynamic braking                            | Optional  |
| <b>Operating Functions</b>          | Accel/Decel time                           | Frequency range over Time (0.1–20.0 Hz) over (1 to 10000 secs)  |
|                                     | Forward and Reverse                        | Programmable  |
|                                     | Soft Stall                                 | Automatic load reduction during overload (Default setting is ON)  |
|                                     | Frequency jumps                            | Three jump frequency settings, set by frequency bandwidth   |
|                                     | HMI  | Direct control of VSD   |
|                                     | Automatic Restart (Catch a Spinning Motor) | A coasting motor can be smoothly restarted (Default setting is OFF)   |
|                                     | Upper/Lower Limit                          | Limits frequency between minimum and maximum values   |
|                                     | Coast stop/Controlled stop/Emergency stop  | ST to CC jumper on VSD terminal board is an alternate coast-to-stop. Programmable coast-to-stop and controlled stop available from operator interface. S4 to CC jumper on VSD terminal board sets emergency stop. |
|                                     | Applications                               | HMI and software is set up for electrical submersible pumps, horizontal pumping systems, and progressive cavity pumps   |

| Item                            |                                    | Standard Specifications  |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Operator Interface (HMI)</b> | Interface                          | Four line, 20 character per line LCD, letters are 5/16-in high, 24 keys, multi-lingual, circuit boards conformal coated, password protection.  |
|                                 | Fault Display                      | Overcurrent, overvoltage, heatsink overheat, load-side short circuit, load-side ground fault, inverter overload, and load-side overcurrent during startup. EEPROM error, RAM error, ROM error, communication error, emergency stop, undervoltage, low current, and open. |
|                                 | Monitor functions                  | Forward/reverse, frequency setting value, output frequency, output current, output voltage, input power, output power, cumulative run time, past faults, excitation current.   |
|                                 | LED charge indicator               | Indicates that the main circuit capacitors are charged.  |
| <b>Inverter/Motor</b>           | Protective functions               | Soft-stall, current limit, overcurrent, overvoltage, short-circuit at load, load-side ground fault, undervoltage, momentary power failure, regeneration power ride-through, electronic thermal overload protection, main-circuit overcurrent at startup, heatsink        |
|                                 | Electronic thermal characteristics | Drive's motor overload protection for motor can be adjusted for motor rated amperage. Motor overload has adjustable speed sensitivity. Soft stall ON/OFF. Motor 120% time programmable.  |
| <b>Input Signals</b>            | Digital                            | Eight auxiliary digital inputs, user-programmable  |
|                                 | Analog                             | Two analog inputs, 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 volts DC, user-programmable   |
|                                 | Serial Ports                       | One RS-485, one RS-232, and one configurable (allocated for Modbus RTU)  |
| <b>Output</b>                   | Digital Relays                     | Four digital relays, user programmable   |
|                                 | Serial Ports                       | One RS-485, one RS-232, and one configurable (allocated for Modbus RTU)  |
|                                 | Analog                             | Two analog outputs (AM and FM terminals, 0 to 1 mA or 4 to 20 mA, user-programmable  |

| Item             |                     | Standard Specifications  |
|------------------|---------------------|--|
| <b>Enclosure</b> | Type                | NEMA Type 1 or 3R  |
|                  | Cooling method      | Forced-air cooling. Internal and external fans are automatically stopped when not necessary for extended fan life.   |
|                  | Color               | ANSI gray #61 polyurethane textured finish   |
|                  | Service environment | Indoor and outdoor ratings. Consult factory for elevations above 4921 ft (1500 m). For example, at 6561 ft (2000 m), derate drive FLA by 11%. Some derating may be required for direct sunlight. Avoid corrosive and/or explosive gases or mists. Consult factory for sunlight deration. |
|                  | Ambient temperature | From —30°C to 50°C (-22°F to 122°F).   |
|                  | Relative humidity   | 20 to 100% maximum (non-condensing)  |
|                  | Vibration           | 5.9 m/s <sup>2</sup> 0.5G maximum (10 to 55 Hz)  |
|                  | Climate class       | 3K3  |
|                  | Pollution degree    | 2  |
|                  | IP rating           | 53 for outdoor units   |
|                  | Disconnect          | Circuit breaker disconnect with 100 KAIC current limiting fuses  |

# Wiring

|            |   |             |
|------------|---|-------------|
| <b>5.1</b> | <b>Connection Block Diagrams</b>                              | <b>5- 1</b> |
| 5.1.1      | Six-Pulse Input   | 5- 1        |
| 5.1.2      | Twelve-Pulse Input  | 5- 1        |
| <b>5.2</b> | <b>Selection of Wiring Equipment and Standard Cable Sizes</b> | <b>5- 2</b> |
| <b>5.3</b> | <b>Grounding</b>  | <b>5- 4</b> |
| <b>5.4</b> | <b>Motor selection</b>  | <b>5- 5</b> |
| 5.4.1      | NEMA MG-1-1993  | 5- 5        |
| 5.4.2      | NEMA MG-1-1994  | 5- 5        |
| <b>5.5</b> | <b>Wiring Considerations for Mechanical Equipment</b>         | <b>5- 6</b> |
| <b>5.6</b> | <b>Interconnection Wiring</b>                                 | <b>5- 6</b> |
| 5.6.1      | HMI Wiring  | 5- 9        |
| 5.6.1.1    | HMI Terminal Board Connections                                | 5- 9        |
| 5.6.1.2    | HMI Power Supply and Power Fail Board Connections             | 5-10        |
| 5.6.1.3    | HMI Serial Board Connections                                  | 5-11        |
| 5.6.1.4    | HMI Logic Board Connections                                   | 5-11        |
| 5.6.1.5    | HMI DSU/Battery Board Connections                             | 5-12        |
| 5.6.2      | VSD Wiring  | 5-13        |
| 5.6.2.1    | VSD Terminal Board Connections                                | 5-13        |
| 5.6.3      | VSD Controller Board Connections                              | 5-15        |
| 5.6.4      | Control Power Transformer Wiring                              | 5-16        |

Intentionally Blank

## 5 WIRING

This chapter contains interconnection information for variable speed drives and how the VSD is connected to

- incoming (customer-supplied) power
- main power bus through the VSD and other components inside the drive enclosure
- drive major components (between the HMI and VSD) and optional equipment (site communications equipment)
- outgoing power to output transformer (when used) and on to the motor(s).

### 5.1 Connection Block Diagrams

The following block diagrams describe connections from the main power supply input, through the VSD, to the motor being driven. Diagrams are shown for both 6-pulse and 12-pulse input power schemes.

#### 5.1.1 Six-Pulse Input

The figure below shows the standard connections for 6-pulse input to a VSD.

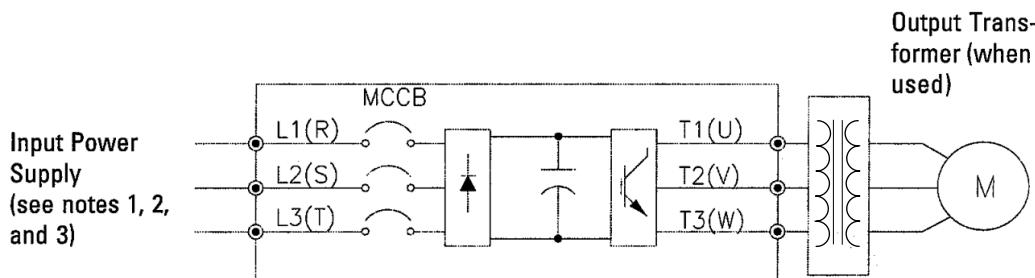
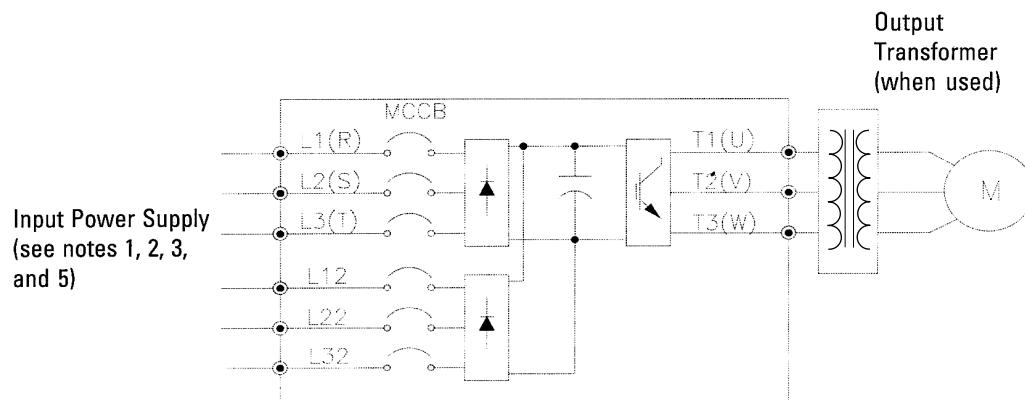


Figure 5-1: Block Diagram for 6-pulse Input

#### 5.1.2 Twelve-Pulse Input

The figure below shows the standard connections for 12-pulse input to a VSD.



**Figure 5-2: Block Diagram for 12-pulse Input**



### Note

1. Properly ground the drive cabinet with a copper conductor to meet local electrical codes. For VSD applications, metal conduit is *not* an acceptable ground. Cabinet ground connection must also comply with NEC-Article 250 and CEC-Section 10.
2. The motor should be grounded to the same point in the drive cabinet as the copper wire. Do not mix input and output conductors in the same conduit. Ground connection must also comply with NEC-Article 250 and CEC-Section 10.
3. An optional junction box is available to simplify the installation of input and output cables. Terminals are marked identically and accessible from a separate box outside the enclosure.
4. Output transformers have numerous taps for different motors and cable lengths. Contact Schlumberger AL InTouch before starting a new application to ensure correct sizing and wiring.
5. Twelve-pulse input requires an input transformer with a polygon winding secondary. This type of input reduces harmonics reflected to the power line.

## 5.2

## Selection of Wiring Equipment and Standard Cable Sizes

This lists the common sizes of main circuit wiring that are available for Schlumberger SWDs.

**Table 5-1: Selection of main circuit wiring equipment (standard cables shown)**

| KVA  | Amp rating (A) | Amps | Digital Control Inputs | **Typical cable size       |                             |                 |  |  |
|------|----------------|------|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|--|
|      |                |      |                        | ***Input Lug Wire Capacity | ***Output Lug Wire Capacity | ****Ground Lugs |  |  |
| 66   | 100            | 99   | #14                    | 1(#14 AWG-1/0)             | 1 (#4 AWG-500 MCM)          | 2 AWG-4/0       |  |  |
| 83   | 150            | 125  | #14                    | 1(#6 AWG-350 MCM)          |                             |                 |  |  |
| 111  | 250            | 166  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 130  | 250            | 195  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 163  | 250            | 245  | #14                    | 1(#2 AWG-500 MCM)          |                             |                 |  |  |
| 200  | 400            | 301  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 260  | 800            | 391  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 325  | 800            | 489  | #14                    | 2(#2 AWG-500 MCM)          |                             |                 |  |  |
| 390  | 800            | 586  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 454  | 800            | 683  | #14                    | 4(4/0-500 MCM)             | 4(#2 AWG-600 MCM)           | 1/0-350 MCM     |  |  |
| 518  | 800            | 780  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 600  | 1000           | 903  | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 700  | 1200           | 1054 | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 815  | 1200           | 1226 | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 932  | 800 x 2        | 1403 | #14                    | 4(1/0-750 MCM)             | 4(1/0-750 MCM)              | 1/0-350 MCM     |  |  |
| 1000 | 800 x 2        | 1504 | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |
| 1200 | 1000 x 2       | 1806 | #14                    |                            |                             |                 |  |  |

\*Any customer-supplied Molded Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB) or Magnetic Circuit Protector (MCP) external to the SWD cabinet should be coordinated with the available short circuit current. The drives are rated for output short circuit fault currents of 100,000 amps (in all ratings). The selection of breakers for this table is in accordance with 1987 NEC Article 430.

\*\* Wire sizing is based upon NEC Table 310.16 or CEC Table 2 using 75°C cable, an ambient of 30°C, cable runs for less than 300 ft, and copper wiring for not more than three conductors in raceway or cable or earth (directly buried). The customer should consult the NEC, CEC, or applicable local area codes standard wire tables for their own particular application and wire sizing and ambient de-rating factors.

\*\*\* Use parallel conductors instead of a single conductor (this will allow for the proper wire bending radius within the cabinet). Use separate conduits for routing parallel conductors. This prevents the need for conductor derating (see Note 2).

\*\*\*\* Lug sizes are based on using copper/aluminum bonding conductor. Refer to CEC Table 16 for copper wire and NEC Table 250.122, based on copper.



### Note

1. Contacts used to connect drive terminals should be capable of switching low-current signals (i.e., 5 mA).
2. When wiring with parallel conductors, the conductors should be kept together in phase sets with U1, V1, W1 in one conduit and parallel conductors U2, V2, W2 in another conduit. The ground conductor should be in one of these conduits.
3. Twisted-pair wiring should be used for pressure feedback signal wiring terminals.
4. Pressure feedback input: 4 to 20 mA or 1 to 5 V signal two-wire twisted pair, #20 AWG; Other signal circuits, use #18 AWG.



### Caution

Potential Severity: Light  
 Potential Loss: Assets  
 Hazard Category: land transport

Turn off power to the drive before making any wiring changes to the analog output circuits.



### Caution

Potential Severity: Light  
 Potential Loss: Assets  
 Hazard Category: land transport

Use separate conduits for routing incoming power, power to motor, and control conductors. Use no more than three power conductors and a ground conductor per conduit.

## 5.3

## Grounding

The VSD should be grounded in accordance with Article 250 of the National Electrical Code or Section 10 of the Canadian Electrical Code, Part I and the grounding conductor should be sized in accordance with NEC Table 250.122 or

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

CEC, Part I Table 16. See [2.1 Installation safety precautions \(p. 2- 1 \)](#) (notes 7 and 13). Local grounding codes may apply. Ground lug is provided inside the VSD on the Ground bus.



**Caution**

Potential Severity: Light  
Potential Loss: Assets  
Hazard Category: electrical

Conduit is not a suitable ground for the inverter.

## 5.4

# Motor selection

Exceeding the peak voltage rating or the rise time allowable for a surface motor insulation system will reduce motor life expectancy. To ensure good motor insulation life, consult the motor supplier for specified peak voltage and rise time allowed for the motor used in your application. The National Electrical Manufacturer's Association publishes the following general standards for motor peak voltage and associated rise time.

### 5.4.1

## NEMA MG-1-1993

Section IV, Part 30, Paragraph 30.02.2.9 states that

When operated under usual service conditions for a surface motor (MG-1-14.02 or 20.80.2) the following limit values at the motor terminals should be observed:  
Voltage (peak) = 1kV or less (where peak voltage is single amplitude) Rise Time = 2 microseconds or greater.

### 5.4.2

## NEMA MG-1-1994

Section IV, Part 31, Paragraph 31.81.2 states that

When operated under usual service conditions (MG-1-31.20) stator winding insulation systems for definite purpose adjustable speed drive-fed motors shall be designed to operate under the following limits at the motor terminals: Voltage (peak) = 1600 volts with a rise time of more than 0.1 microseconds (where peak voltage is single amplitude).

## 5.5 Wiring Considerations for Mechanical Equipment

The following cautions and warnings are special considerations that should be made for mechanical equipment and components such as motors, shafts, bearings, when this equipment will be driven and controlled by a variable speed drive.

**Caution**

Potential Severity: Light

Potential Loss: Assets

Hazard Category: machinery equipment hand tools, temperature

Surface motors operating from adjustable-speed drive power sources tend to operate at higher temperatures, which may increase the need for more frequent lubrication cycles. Failure to lubricate motors driven by adjustable-speed drives could cause premature failure of the motor.

**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

Operating motors at carrier frequencies higher than 5 kHz may require the motor shaft to be grounded or motor bearings to be insulated to prevent current (by capacitative coupling to ground) from being passed down the shaft.

**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets

Hazard Category: electrical

Submersible motors powered by VSD output transformers require special application concerns. Contact AL InTouch or AL Engineering before starting a new VSD application.

## 5.6 Interconnection Wiring

The following subsections describe how the PC boards of the HMI and the VSD are interconnected for power and communication both within the drive and to external or optional equipment. Refer to [Figure 5-3 Speedstar 2000 Power/Communications System Overview Block Diagram \(p. 5-9\)](#) for a simplified diagram of how the HMI, VSD, Site Communications equipment

(if required), and external devices (if required) are connected. Detailed interconnection diagrams are presented in the respective subsystem sections that follow and circuit diagrams are included in the appendices.

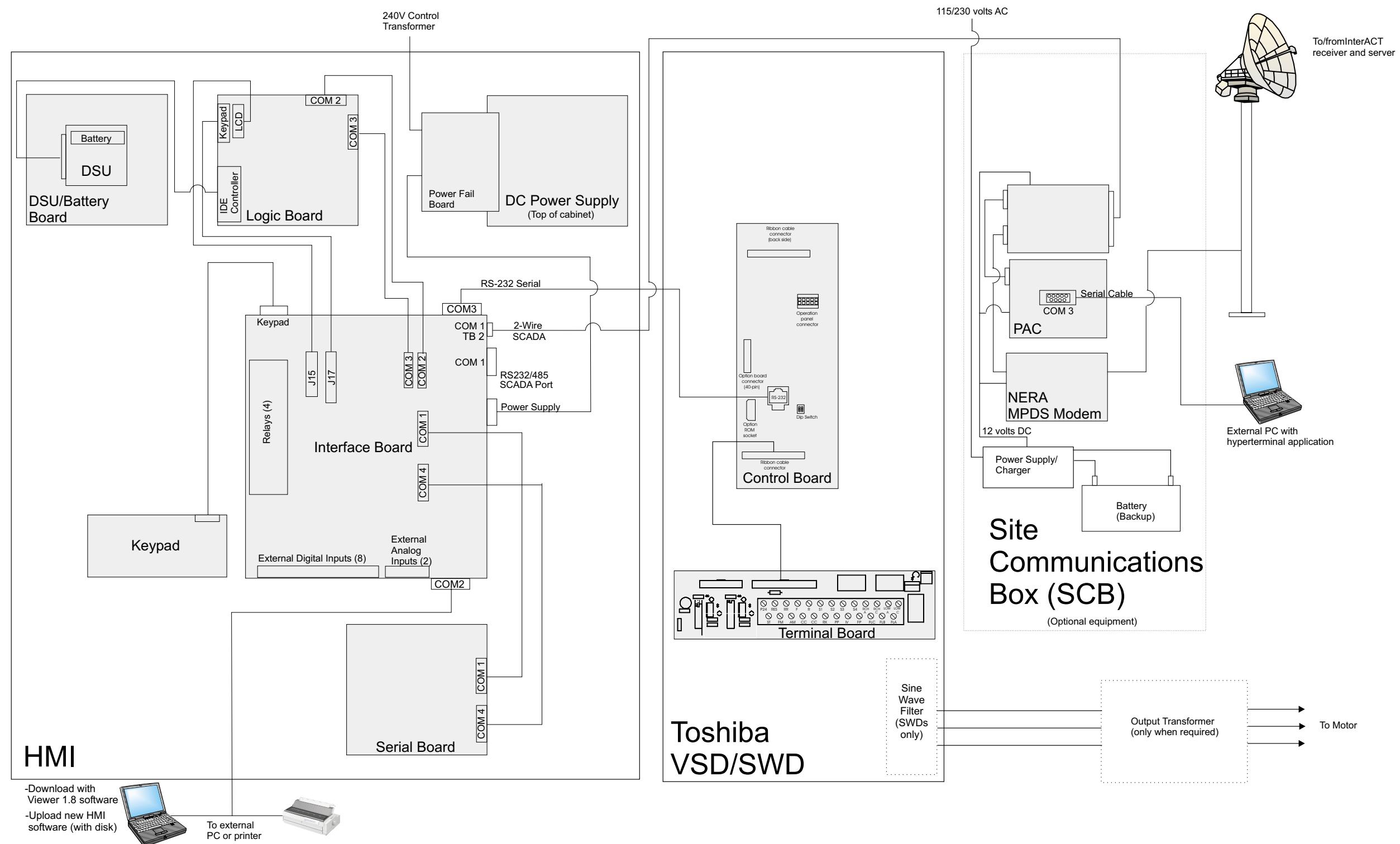


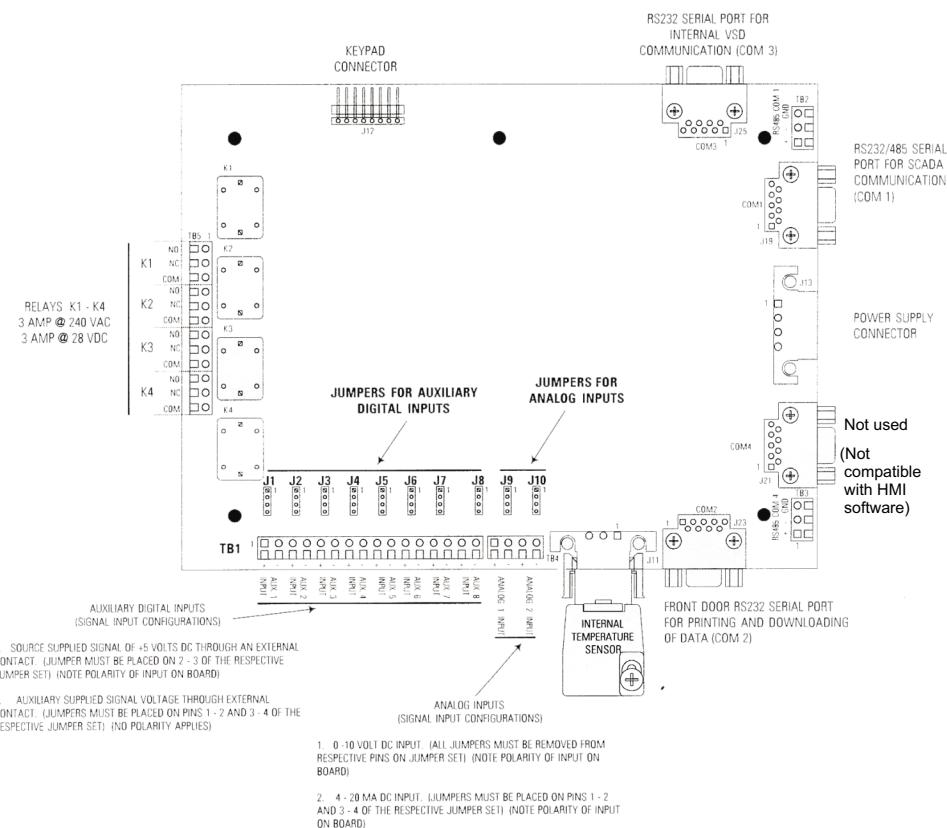
Figure 5-3: Speedstar 2000 Power/Communications System Overview Block Diagram

## 5.6.1 HMI Wiring

This section contains detailed wiring and connection information about the HMI. Discussions are organized by PC board. For more complex boards with numerous connections, a table follows the detailed block/interconnect diagrams and contains terminal functional descriptions.

### **5.6.1.1 HMI Terminal Board Connections**

The following figure and table describe all control wiring connections to the HMI Terminal Board.



**Figure 5-4: HMI Terminal Board Interconnect Diagram**

Refer to [Table 5-2 HMI Terminal Board Description](#) for HMI board connection descriptions and functions.

Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger. Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**Table 5-2: HMI Terminal Board Description**

| Terminal Name | Terminal Functions  | Terminal Location  |
|---------------|---|--------------------|
| TB5           | Output relays, Contact Ratings: 3A @ 230VAC, 3A@28VDC (Form C — SPDT  | HMI Terminal Board |
| TB1           | Digital Auxiliary Inputs  |                    |
| J1-B          | Auxiliary Input Discrete Contacts install jumper 2 to 3 for logic level (+5V) external signal applied to the circuit, install jumpers 1 to 2 and 3 to 4 for external switch with operator interface supplying power |                    |
| TB4           | Analog Inputs   |                    |
| J9-10         | Install jumper 1 to 2 and 3 to 4 for 4–20mA input. Remove all jumpers for 0–10V input.  |                    |
| COM2          | 9-pin D-conn/receptacle standard RS-232 pinout. Printer Default. Download data with Viewer 1.8 software and upload new revs of HMI software (with portable disk).   |                    |
| TB2           | RS-485 two-wire SCADA   |                    |
| COM4          | 9-pin D-conn/receptacle RS-485 configurable. Pin1=Data-, Pin2=Data+, Pin5=Ground  |                    |
|               | <p> <b>Note</b><br/>           Use of this port is not compatible with HMI software.</p>  |                    |
| COM1          | 9-pin D-conn/receptacle RS-485 default. RS-232/RS-422/RS-485. SCADA Default Pin1=Data-, Pin2=Data+, Pin5=Ground   |                    |
| TB3           | RS-485 default, two wire only.  |                    |
| COM3          | 9-pin D-conn/receptacle standard RS-232 pinout. Connection from Operator Interface to VSD Controller Board (PCB1).  |                    |

### 5.6.1.2 HMI Power Supply and Power Fail Board Connections

The HMI power supply and Power Fail Board are mounted either on the ceiling (top), back wall, or side wall (depending on kVA size of drive) of the drive enclosure. Refer to [Figure 5-5 HMI Power Supply and Power Fail Board Interconnect Diagram](#).

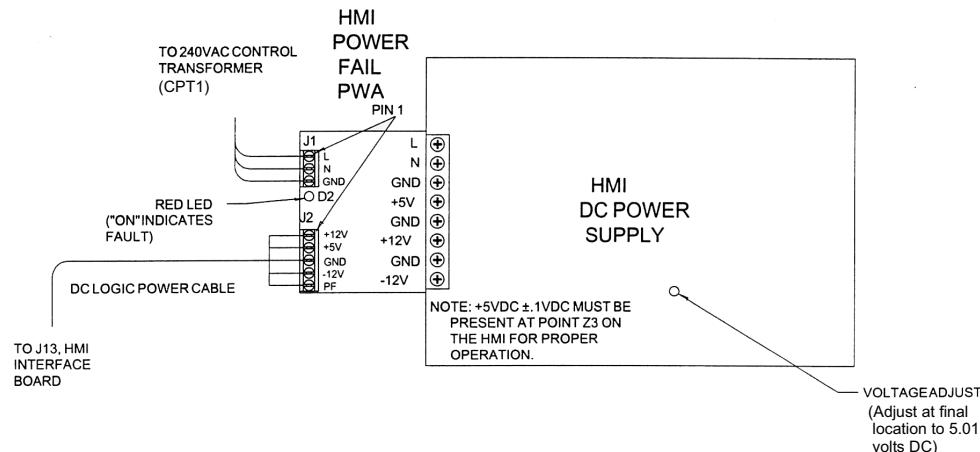


Figure 5-5: HMI Power Supply and Power Fail Board Interconnect Diagram

### 5.6.1.3 HMI Serial Board Connections

The HMI Serial Board is located/mounted (with standoffs) directly on top of the HMI Terminal Board as you face the inside of the drive enclosure door. Refer to Figure 5-6 HMI Serial Board Interconnect Diagram.

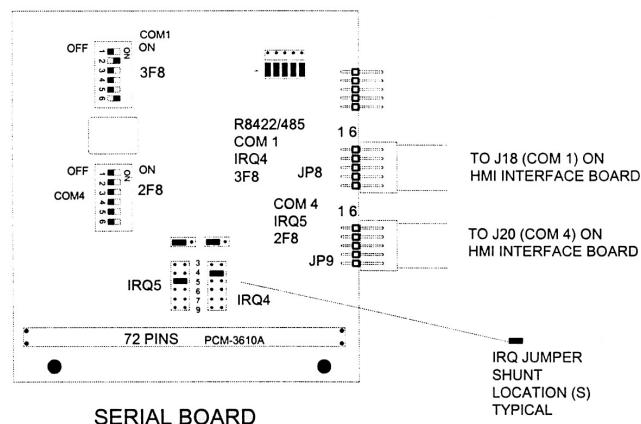


Figure 5-6: HMI Serial Board Interconnect Diagram

### 5.6.1.4 HMI Logic Board Connections

The HMI Logic Board is located/mounted (with standoffs) directly on top of the HMI Serial Board as you face the inside of the drive enclosure door. Refer to Figure 5-7 HMI Logic Board Interconnect Diagram.

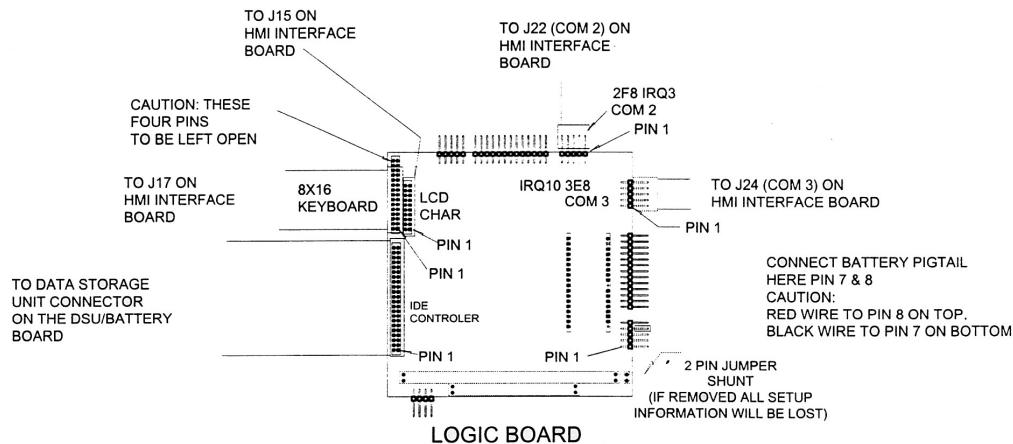


Figure 5-7: HMI Logic Board Interconnect Diagram

#### 5.6.1.5

### HMI DSU/Battery Board Connections

The HMI DSU/Battery Board is located/mounted (with standoffs) directly on top of the HMI Logic Board as you face the inside of the drive enclosure door. Refer to [Figure 5-8 HMI DSU/Battery Board Interconnect Diagram](#).

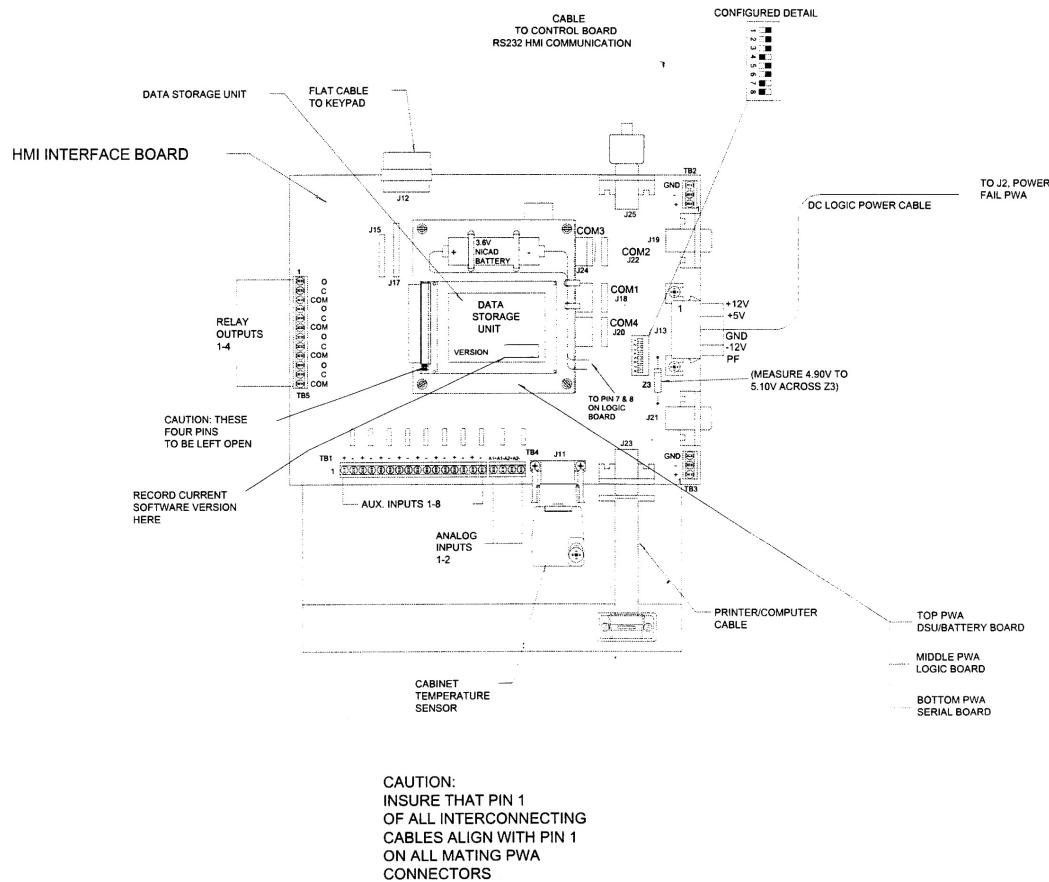


Figure 5-8: HMI DSU/Battery Board Interconnect Diagram

### 5.6.2

## VSD Wiring

For purposes of discussion in this manual, VSD wiring is confined to interconnection or communication wiring to or from the VSD, or to the HMI or other external devices in the Speedstar 2000 system. Wiring internal to the Toshiba G3 is not within the scope of this manual.

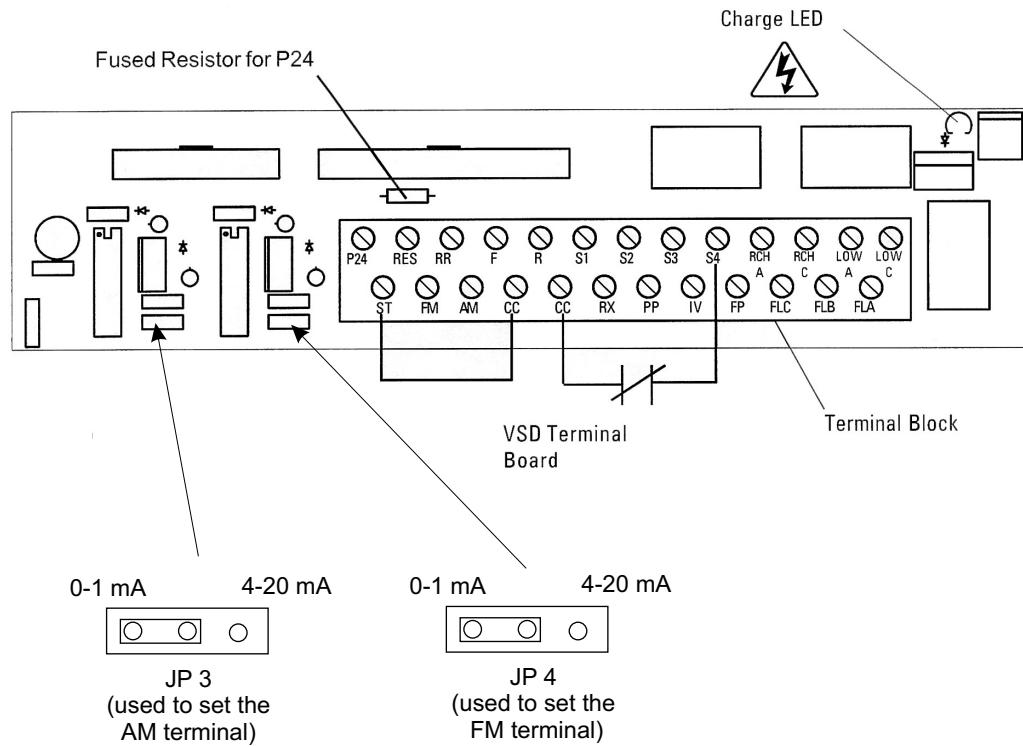
### 5.6.2.1

## VSD Terminal Board Connections

The following figure describes all control wiring connections to the VSD Terminal Board. Refer to [Figure 5-9 VSD Terminal Board Interconnect Diagram](#) and [Table 5-3 VSD Terminal Locations](#) for terminal descriptions.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.



**Figure 5-9: VSD Terminal Board Interconnect Diagram**

The VSD Terminal Board contains two interlocks which enable and disable certain functions of the drive. See the following list for interlock descriptions.

| Term            | Definition   |
|-----------------|--|
| <b>ST to CC</b> | Opening this interlock enables the <i>coast stop</i> function of the VSD. Reconnecting this interlock restarts the drive if it was running before it stopped. <b>If connection ST to CC is not made, the drive will not start.</b> |
| <b>S4 to CC</b> | Opening this interlock causes an <i>E-stop</i> trip in the VSD. This must be reset before the drive can be restarted.  |



#### Note

This interlock should not be used in the field

This interlock may cause inverter overload messages when the drive restarts.

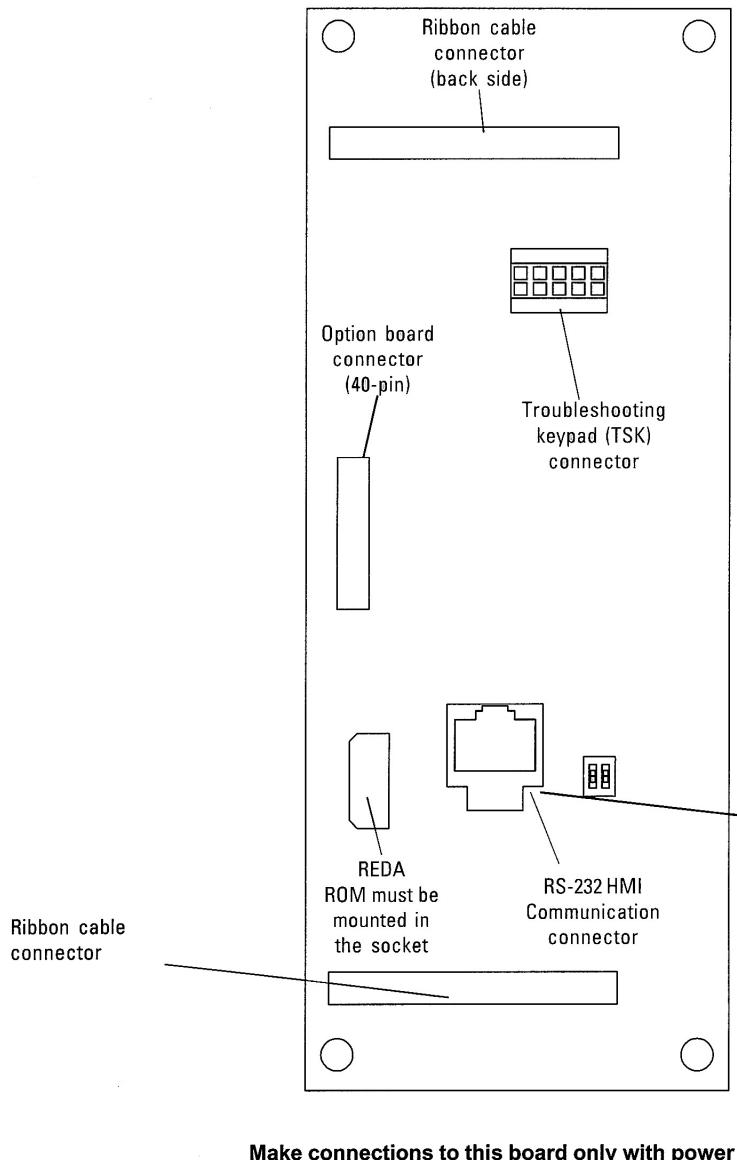
**Table 5-3: VSD Terminal Locations**

| Terminal Name  | Terminal Functions  | Terminal Location             |
|--|---|-------------------------------|
| L1(R), L2(S),<br>L3(T)                                     | Line input terminals for 6-pulse models: connect to either 3-phase 50-Hz 380 to 400 volts AC or 3-phase 60-Hz 415 to 480 volts AC                               |                               |
| L1(R),<br>L2(S), L3(T),<br>L12(R2),<br>L22(S2),<br>L32(T2) | Line input terminals for 12-pulse models: connect to either 6-phase 50-Hz 380 to 400 volts AC or 6-phase 60-Hz 415 to 480 volts AC                              | VSD terminal block or bus bar |
| T1(U), T2(V),<br>T3(W)                                     | Motor output terminals. Connect these terminals to a 3-phase induction motor of the proper voltage, current, and horsepower, or input to a step-up transformer. |                               |

## 5.6.3

**VSD Controller Board Connections**

The VSD Controller Board is located directly on top of the VSD Gate Driver Board and is in the direct center of the VSD when viewing the drive with the enclosure door open. Refer to [Figure 5-10 VSD Controller Board Interconnect Diagram](#).



### Warning!

DO NOT remove or attach the RS-232 connector of the HMI while power is ON.

VSD Controller Board will be damaged.

Figure 5-10: VSD Controller Board Interconnect Diagram

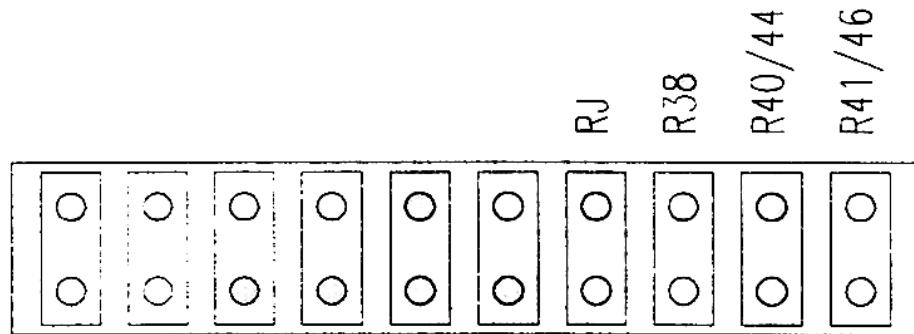
#### 5.6.4

## Control Power Transformer Wiring

Also located within the VSD enclosure is the Control Power Transformer (one, sometimes two CPTs are included, depending upon application). Refer to [Figure 5-11 Control Power Transformer \(CPT\) Terminal Block](#) and [Table 5-4 CPT Connections and Functions](#) for control power transformer (CPT) connections and functions.

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.



**Figure 5-11: Control Power Transformer (CPT) Terminal Block**

**i Note**

On VSD ranges of 66 to 454 KVA, a jumper should start at terminal "RJ" and should be terminated on the proper terminal for the appropriate input voltage at which the VSD is to be used. Refer to [Table 5-4 CPT Connections and Functions](#) for the proper terminations needed on the Control Power Transformer (CPT).

**Table 5-4: CPT Connections and Functions**

| Terminal Name | Terminal Functions                               | Terminal Location  |
|---------------|--|--------------------|
| R41/46        | CPT Connection for 460 V, 60-Hz and 415 V, 50-Hz | CPT terminal block |
| R40/44        | CPT Connection for 440 V, 60-Hz and 400 V, 50-Hz |                    |
| R38           | CPT Connection for 380 V, 50-Hz                  |                    |
| RJ            | CPT Common                                       |                    |

Intentionally Blank

# Operator Interface

|             |   |             |
|-------------|---|-------------|
| <b>6.1</b>  | <b>Introduction</b>                                   | <b>6- 1</b> |
| 6.1.1       | Main Operating Mode Keys and Functions                | 6- 2        |
| 6.1.2       | Overview of Additional Functions                      | 6- 3        |
| <b>6.2</b>  | <b>Display mode</b>                                   | <b>6- 3</b> |
| 6.2.1       | Status Mode   | 6- 3        |
| 6.2.2       | Help Mode   | 6- 4        |
| 6.2.3       | Menu Mode   | 6- 4        |
| 6.2.3.1     | Data Entry from the Menu Screen                       | 6- 4        |
| 6.2.3.2     | Numeric Entry   | 6- 4        |
| 6.2.3.3     | Text Entry  | 6- 4        |
| <b>6.3</b>  | <b>Keypad</b>   | <b>6- 5</b> |
| <b>6.4</b>  | <b>Commissioning/Recommissioning</b>                  | <b>6- 7</b> |
| <b>6.5</b>  | <b>Passwords</b>                                      | <b>6- 8</b> |
| 6.5.1       | Setting the Master Password                           | 6- 8        |
| 6.5.2       | Setting the User Password                             | 6- 9        |
| <b>6.6</b>  | <b>Date/time</b>                                      | <b>6- 9</b> |
| <b>6.7</b>  | <b>Speed, Current, or Pressure Control Mode</b>       | <b>6- 9</b> |
| 6.7.1       | Speed Mode  | 6-10        |
| 6.7.1.1     | Speed-Source Control                                  | 6-10        |
| 6.7.1.2     | Signal-Follower Control                               | 6-11        |
| 6.7.2       | Current Mode  | 6-11        |
| 6.7.3       | Pressure Mode   | 6-12        |
| <b>6.8</b>  | <b>Ramp rates</b>                                     | <b>6-12</b> |
| <b>6.9</b>  | <b>Analog Inputs</b>                                  | <b>6-14</b> |
| <b>6.10</b> | <b>Digital Auxiliary Inputs</b>                       | <b>6-15</b> |
| 6.10.1      | Logic-Level (DC +/-5 V) Input                         | 6-16        |
| 6.10.2      | Relay Contact Input                                   | 6-16        |
| <b>6.11</b> | <b>Output Relays</b>                                  | <b>6-17</b> |
| <b>6.12</b> | <b>Timers</b>   | <b>6-18</b> |
| 6.12.1      | Ignore-at-Startup Timer                               | 6-18        |
| 6.12.2      | Activation Delay Timer                                | 6-18        |
| 6.12.3      | Automatic Restart Delay Timer                         | 6-19        |
| 6.12.4      | Other Start Delay Timers                              | 6-20        |
| <b>6.13</b> | <b>Jump Frequencies</b>                               | <b>6-21</b> |
| <b>6.14</b> | <b>Proportional/Integral/Derivative (PID) Control</b> | <b>6-21</b> |
| 6.14.1      | Proportional Speed Control                            | 6-22        |
| 6.14.2      | Integral Speed Control                                | 6-22        |
| 6.14.3      | Derivative Speed Control                              | 6-23        |
| <b>6.15</b> | <b>Data Log/History Log/Configuration</b>             | <b>6-23</b> |
| <b>6.16</b> | <b>Printing</b>                                       | <b>6-24</b> |
| <b>6.17</b> | <b>Stop Mode</b>                                      | <b>6-24</b> |
| <b>6.18</b> | <b>Internal Temperature</b>                           | <b>6-25</b> |
| <b>6.19</b> | <b>Direct access</b>                                  | <b>6-25</b> |
| <b>6.20</b> | <b>Motor/VSD Current Measurement Calibration</b>      | <b>6-25</b> |

|             |  |       |             |
|-------------|--|-------|-------------|
| <b>6.21</b> | <b>Tracking Underload</b>                          | <hr/> | <b>6-26</b> |
| <b>6.22</b> | <b>Graph Printing</b>                              | <hr/> | <b>6-27</b> |
| <b>6.23</b> | <b>Catch a Spinning Motor</b>                      | <hr/> | <b>6-28</b> |
| <b>6.24</b> | <b>Base Frequency Voltage Select</b>               | <hr/> | <b>6-29</b> |
| <b>6.25</b> | <b>Start Hertz</b>                                 | <hr/> | <b>6-29</b> |
| <b>6.26</b> | <b>Start-Up Voltage Boost</b>                      | <hr/> | <b>6-29</b> |
| <b>6.27</b> | <b>Volts-per-Hertz Patterns and Vector Control</b> | <hr/> | <b>6-30</b> |
| <b>6.28</b> | <b>Acceleration Rate</b>                           | <hr/> | <b>6-30</b> |
| <b>6.29</b> | <b>Deceleration Rate</b>                           | <hr/> | <b>6-30</b> |
| <b>6.30</b> | <b>Rocking Starts</b>                              | <hr/> | <b>6-31</b> |
| <b>6.31</b> | <b>Forced Frequencies</b>                          | <hr/> | <b>6-31</b> |
| <b>6.32</b> | <b>VSD Service Routines</b>                        | <hr/> | <b>6-32</b> |

## 6 OPERATOR INTERFACE

This chapter provides detailed descriptions, functions, and operating procedures for the operator interface, more often referred to as the Human/Machine Interface (HMI), used on Schlumberger variable speed drives and sine wave drives. The HMI is a customized interface for Toshiba variable speed drives and therefore replaces the Toshiba keypad and operator interface mentioned in any Toshiba reference material.

### 6.1 Introduction

The operator interface (HMI) for the Schlumberger variable speed drives and sine wave drives contains several major subsystems: an 8 inch x 8 inch keypad with 24 keys, an expandable embedded controller, extensive I/O points, and flexible, programmable software.

The HMI hardware consists of

- a membrane tactile keypad
- 4 digital output relays
- 8 digital inputs
- 2 analog inputs for either 0 to 10 VDC and/or 4 to 20 mA input
- 3 serial ports.

All information is displayed on a four line, 20-character, liquid crystal display (LCD) mounted on the keypad. All error messages, status, numeric values, etc. are displayed in one of three languages: English, Spanish, or Russian. Programmable software allows additional languages to be added (consult Schlumberger Artificial Lift for additional languages). There are no cryptic numbers or codes to decipher. All inputs to the controller are transmitted via the membrane keypad, SCADA I/O, analog inputs, and digital inputs. The contrast of the liquid crystal display can be adjusted using a single key. The same key toggles the backlight intensity for viewing the HMI in subdued light.

## 6.1.1

## Main Operating Mode Keys and Functions

The main operating keys on the HMI keypad are located across the top of the unit. These may be manipulated manually from the keypad or remotely via SCADA input/commands and are:

| Term        | Definition  |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Hand</b> | One of two basic operating modes for the VSD ( <i>Hand</i> or <i>Auto</i> ). In <i>Hand</i> mode, the restart timer functions are not acknowledged and the VSD may be started or stopped by using either the local keypad ( <i>Off</i> or <i>Start</i> keys) or SCADA mode.   |
| <b>Auto</b> | One of two basic operating modes for the VSD ( <i>Hand</i> or <i>Auto</i> ). In the <i>Auto</i> mode, the restart timer functions are acknowledged and the VSD may be started or stopped by using either the local keypad or SCADA mode. OFF will always stop the VSD, regardless of the present mode. The present mode is indicated by the lighting of LEDs located just below each key. |

Scroll-through menu items are provided for set up of the VSD, and help screens are accessible for each menu item.



### Note

An auto-jump function is provided for quicker movement through the parameters by using the SHIFT key. The auto-jump will move to the beginning menu of each menu series. Menu series are organized by major function. Refer to the following table for an overview description of menu series. For detailed menu descriptions, refer to the appendix listing Speedstar 2000 Menus.

**Table 6-1: Menu Series Overview**

| Menu Series  | Function  |
|--------------|---|
| 000 thru 099 | commissioning, status, and specialized task menus     |
| 100          | primary input and parameter menus                     |
| 200          | VSD setup menus                                       |
| 300          | output menus (for addressing devices external to VSD) |
| 500          | special controls                                      |
| 600          | auxiliary input menus                                 |
| 700          | analog output menus                                   |
| 800          | analog input menus                                    |
| 850          | equipment menus                                       |
| 900          | direct access menus                                   |
| 999          | G3 service and test routines (restricted access)      |

### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.2 Overview of Additional Functions

- Three main control modes are available for VSD operation: Speed, Current, and Pressure. The Speed control mode contains two sub-modes; speed source and signal-follower. Refer to the *Speed, Current, or Pressure Modes* subsection in this chapter.
- Two logging files are available: History Log and Data Log. An RS232 front-panel port (accessible without opening the drive enclosure) is provided for downloading the history log and data log to a local printer or PC (using Viewer 1.8).
- The HMI offers Modbus RTU protocol as standard for connection to SCADA systems through the RS485 port on the HMI Terminal Board. A 3-pin terminal (TB2) or a 9-pin D connector (COM1) is provided for cable connection.
- Selectable stopping mode (for the motor) is available: Coast-to-stop or controlled stop are the standard choices. Factory default is Coast-to-Stop.

## 6.2 Display mode

The HMI is in one of three display modes while operating: status, help, or menu.



### Note

The *MENU/ESC* key can always be used to access the status screen. Depending upon which screen is presently being displayed, the *MENU/ESC* key may need to be pressed more than once to reach the status screen. Once the status screen is displayed, the *MENU/ESC* key will toggle between the status and menu screens.

### 6.2.1 Status Mode

The initial status screen display mode is recognizable by the fact the top line of the screen will display the date and time (e.g., 12MAY1998 15:05:21). As expected from its name, the status screen displays various system status parameters. It displays the time and date, the control mode for which the VSD is set up, whether the VSD is running, the speed at which the VSD is running, what current the VSD is supplying, and what voltage the VSD is supplying. Pressing the *UP/DOWN* arrow keys will cause the status screen to page through several other parameters of interest including the drive's amperage rating, the software version number, the analog input values, the internal temperatures, run times, and other information.

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 6.2.2 Help Mode

Pressing the *HELP* key will cause the help text for the presently displayed screen to appear. Pressing the *HELP* key again will cause the original screen to reappear. Pressing the *UP/DOWN* arrow keys will allow the help text to be scrolled line by line. Pressing the *SHIFT* key allows the arrow keys to be used as *PAGE UP* and *PAGE DOWN* keys and will scroll the help text screen by screen.

## 6.2.3 Menu Mode

The menu screen is identified by the menu number and a main title located on the first line (e.g., 120 SPEED MENU), the second and third lines contain additional description (e.g., MINIMUM SPEED (HZ)), the fourth line will contain the present value of that menu item (e.g., 20 HZ).

```
120 SPEED MENU
MINIMUM
SPEED (HZ)
20.0
```

### 6.2.3.1 Data Entry from the Menu Screen

From the menu screen the value of a menu item can be changed by pressing the *ENTER* key. If the value is allowed to be changed, the displayed value will begin flashing. Otherwise, a message such as *PASSWORD REQUIRED* may momentarily appear. Pressing the *ENTER* key will finish the data entry. Pressing the *MENU/ESC* key will abort the data entry.

### 6.2.3.2 Numeric Entry

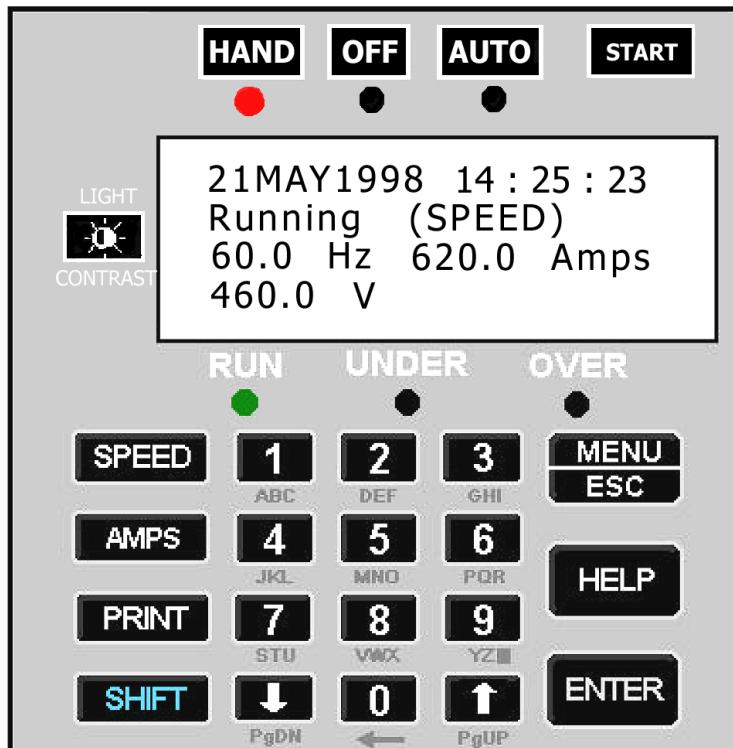
If the data entry is numeric, the *UP/DOWN* arrow keys will increment/decrement the displayed value. The numeric (0-9) keys will shift the displayed number one place to the left and place the selected number in the newly vacated position on the right.

### 6.2.3.3 Text Entry

If the data entry is text, the *UP* arrow key will move the cursor one place to the right, the *DOWN* arrow key will move the cursor one place to the left, the numeric (0-9) keys when pressed repeatedly will cause the character under the cursor to scroll through the characters associated with each numeric key.

## 6.3 Keypad

The HMI keypad provides input capability to the operator from the exterior of the drive enclosure. Also in the keypad is an integral LCD screen. Refer to [Figure 6-1 HMI keypad \(Speedstar 2000, Sine Wave Drives\)](#) for an example of the keypad.



**Figure 6-1: HMI keypad (Speedstar 2000, Sine Wave Drives)**

Refer to [Table 6-2 HMI Keypad Key Descriptions](#) for detailed descriptions for each key.

**Table 6-2: HMI Keypad Key Descriptions**

| Key | Function  |
|-----|---|
|     | The numeric keys 1 through 9 function as follows in text entry mode:<br>By default each keypress cycles through the number and the letters listed below it ( 1 - A - B - C ) and then repeats the sequence.<br>The SHIFT key toggles the sequence so that it begins with the first letter listed and cycles through the remaining letters followed by the number ( A - B - C - 1 ) and then repeats the sequence.<br>The numeric entry mode displays the pressed number only. The 0 (zero) key is used to display zero. SHIFT toggles the key so it functions as a backspace. |
|     | Shortcut to the <i>Maximum Current</i> Menu   |
|     | Puts the drive in <i>AUTO</i> mode.   |
|     | Pressing <i>ENTER</i> while browsing the menus selects the currently displayed item for modification. After modifying, pressing <i>ENTER</i> will confirm and retain the change. If no change was made, pressing <i>ENTER</i> will return the selected item to its previous setting.  |
|     | Puts the drive in <i>HAND</i> mode.   |
|     | The <i>HELP</i> key at any time will display detailed help information for the currently displayed screen.  |
|     | Momentarily press the key to toggle the backlight ON or OFF. Press and hold the key down to adjust the contrast until the key is released. If the contrast dims, repeating the procedure will brighten it.  |
|     | From the status screen, the <i>MENU/ESCAPE</i> key will display the last menu item browsed.<br>If already in the menus, the key functions as follows:<br>If an item is being modified, <i>MENU/ESCAPE</i> will discard the change.<br>While browsing the menus, <i>MENU/ESCAPE</i> will return the display to the status screen.  |
|     | Stops the drive if it is running.   |

| Key   | Function  |
|---|---|
|  PgDN    | Performs the <i>down</i> function throughout the interface except in text entry mode where it moves the cursor back one character.  |
|  PgUP    | Performs the <i>up</i> function throughout the interface except in text entry mode where it moves the cursor forward one character. |
|  PRINT   | Shortcut to the <i>Print Configuration</i> menu.  |
|  SHIFT   | Selects alternate modes for certain keys.   |
|  SPEED | Shortcut to the <i>Target Speed</i> menu.   |
|  START | Starts the drive if in <i>HAND</i> mode, overrides start-up delays and starts drive if in <i>AUTO</i> mode.                         |

## 6.4

## Commissioning/Recommissioning

Refer to the Commissioning/Recommissioning section in the Startup and Commissioning chapter of this manual for these procedures.

### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 6.5 Passwords

To be able to operate the HMI in a secure mode, two security levels and their associated passwords must be assigned (or reassigned) and known by users. The two passwords (master password and user password) each must be a number from 0 to 9999. The passwords cannot be alphabetic character strings. Each of the security levels will automatically lock after about 30 minutes of keyboard inactivity and if enabled, will power up locked.



### Note

If a password of zero (0) is entered for either the master or user password, then that level will not automatically lock after keyboard inactivity. Essentially, a password of zero disables password protection. For example, the HMI may be left in the user mode without requiring the password to be re-entered every day.

---

If the HMI is not configured and run in master or user mode, it is locked by limiting the number of menus accessible to the user.

---



### Tip

Menus 102, 105, 610, 800, 111, 100, 240, 241, 242, 246, 247, 248, 250, 251, 252, 253 are always available for the operator, no matter what the current security level of the HMI. Additional menus can be opened to User Password access by setting them to enabled status with Menu 104.

---

### 6.5.1

## Setting the Master Password

To enable master—level access, the master password must be set and confirmed by the following steps:

1. The master password entered in Menu 102 [Figure A-1 Menus 100 to 104 \(p. A-2\)](#) must match the master password previously entered in Menu 103 (change master password) [Figure A-1 Menus 100 to 104 \(p. A-2\)](#). To be able to change the password, you must know the previously active password.
2. If the password entered in menu 102 is correct, the display will change to 0, confirming that the master level is enabled.
3. If the number entered changes to 9999, the master level is locked.

### 6.5.2 Setting the User Password

To enable user-level access, the user password must be set and confirmed by the following steps:

1. The user password entered in Menu 105 [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#) must match the user password previously entered in Menu 106 [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#).
2. If the password entered in Menu 105 is correct, the display will change to 0, confirming that the user level is enabled.
3. If the password entered causes the display to change to 9999, the user level is locked.

## 6.6 Date/time

Date and time are recorded with data and events as they occur for analysis of the information at a later date.

Dates are displayed in *ddmmyyyy* format. To change the system date, access Menu 217 [Figure A-15 Menus 214 to 219 \(p. A-16\)](#) and perform the following steps:

1. Enter numbers as text. Press the numeric keys (1 through 9) to increment the month and press 0 to decrement the month.
2. Press the arrow keys to position the cursor to a new location for data entry.

System time is displayed in the *hh:mm:ss* format. To change the system time, access Menu 216 [Figure A-15 Menus 214 to 219 \(p. A-16\)](#). Time is entered as text.

## 6.7 Speed, Current, or Pressure Control Mode

The VSD can be programmed to operate in one of three basic control modes; speed, current or pressure. This mode is programmed into the VSD by using Menu 107–Control Type [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#).

**Note**

Speed, Current, or Pressure mode controls how the VSD will change the motor speed while running. These modes are completely independent of the shutdown and restart conditions that are programmed for the most commonly occurring faults that may be experienced while the drive and motor are in service. For example, the VSD may stop due to a sensed underpressure condition, regardless of whether it is running in Speed, Pressure, or Current control mode.

## 6.7.1 Speed Mode

The speed control mode has two methods of controlling the VSD frequency; speed-source control or signal-follower control (Menu 120 –Speed Source)

[Figure A-3 Menus 110 to 122 \(p. A- 4 \).](#)

### 6.7.1.1 Speed-Source Control

In the speed-source control method, the user programs a frequency at which the VSD is to operate. To select this mode, perform the following:

1. Set this method by programming the *speed source* menu to *user*.
2. Once started, the VSD will ramp up the motor speed to the set frequency and maintain the set frequency until the user selects another frequency or the VSD mode is changed.

**Note**

Changes in current or external inputs do not have any effect on the VSD running frequency. The drive will run at the user-selected frequency or will stop due to some other preprogrammed event or fault. Stall Protection is the only exception to this rule (see Menu 451 [Figure A-22 Menus 347 to 454 \(p. A-23\)](#) and Menu 452 [Figure A-22 Menus 347 to 454 \(p. A-23\)](#)).

3. If the user changes the set frequency while the VSD is running, the drive will change to the new frequency by accelerating or decelerating at the programmed ramp rate for speed control (Menus 124 [Figure A-4 Menus 123 to 128 \(p. A- 5 \)](#) and 125 ).

Speed—source control mode is the most common mode and the default mode of VSD operation.

### 6.7.1.2 Signal-Follower Control

The second speed control method is called signal-follower mode.

1. Set this method by programming the *speed source* menu selection to the correct *analog input* (the analog signal that you wish to control the VSD).



#### Tip

The analog input to be used for the external speed source is programmed from the HMI (Menu 800—Analog Inputs Selection [Figure A-29 Menus 702 to 803 \(p. A-30\)](#)).

2. The VSD will adjust the output frequency directly proportional to the analog signal input selected.
3. During signal-follower control method of operation, the HMI will maintain its maximum and minimum limits even if the analog signal should go past these limits.

### 6.7.2 Current Mode

In current control mode (Menu 140—Target Current [Figure A-5 Menus 129 to 141 \(p. A-6\)](#)) the VSD continuously changes the output frequency to try to maintain the output (or motor) current to match the user's programmed target current. Current control mode is useful in situations where the motor frequency is not as important as the current, perhaps because the motor is driving a varying load. To program the VSD to run in current control mode, perform the following steps:

1. First, the operator interface needs to be programmed to use the VSD output current or the motor current (Menu 108—Amps Display Value [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A-3\)](#)).
2. If motor current is to be used, calibration of the transducer or current-sensing device will be required. Refer to .
3. Input a target current.
4. Once the VSD is started or changed to current mode if already running, it will continuously monitor the current and compare it to the user's programmed target current.

5. If the current is too high or too low, the VSD output frequency will be adjusted (at the user's programmed current ramp rate) to maintain target current.
6. If the current (or any other parameter) is outside of the programmed range for more than the specified time the VSD may stop and restart, if programmed to do so. Menus 141 [Figure A-5 Menus 129 to 141 \(p. A- 6 \)](#) through 147 [Figure A-7 Menus 147 to 151 \(p. A- 8 \)](#), and Menu 150 [Figure A-7 Menus 147 to 151 \(p. A- 8 \)](#) control drive restart conditions.

### 6.7.3 Pressure Mode

The pressure control mode operates through an optional Proportional/Integral/Derivative (PID) Control. The PID Control is disabled or enabled with Menu 182 –PID Control [Figure A-12 Menus 180 to 185 \(p. A-13\)](#). When PID control is disabled, the VSD will operate in a similar mode to current control, discussed above. When set to Pressure mode, the HMI continuously monitors the pump output pressure signal set by Menu 163 [Figure A-8 Menus 152 to 163 \(p. A- 9 \)](#), compares that signal to the programmed target pressure, then adjusts the VSD output frequency (which ramps up or down at the programmed pressure ramp rate, set by Menus 165 [Figure A-9 Menus 164 to 169 \(p. A-10\)](#) and 166 ). The rate of VSD frequency change will depend on PID and Pressure Control Ramp Rate settings. The VSD output frequency may be programmed to increase or decrease when the pressure is higher or lower than the target pressure (Menu 164). For more information, refer to the section on PID control in this manual.

## 6.8 Ramp rates

Ramp rates are defined as the rate of change of VSD output frequency over time. Separate control ramp rates may be programmed by the user for all of the different control modes of the VSD (Speed, Current, Pressure). Also, separate accel ramp rate for initial acceleration from startup frequency (Menu 458 [Figure A-23 Menus 455 to 459 \(p. A-24\)](#)) and minimum speed to target speed may be programmed by using the following menus.

| Term                    | Definition                                     |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Menu 124 and 125</b> | Speed Control Ramp                             |
| <b>Menu 148 and 149</b> | Current Control Ramp                           |
| <b>Menu 165 and 166</b> | Pressure Control Ramp                          |
| <b>Menu 470 and 471</b> | Startup Frequency to Minimum Running Frequency |

### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Menu 472 and 473</b> | Minimum Speed to Target Speed Ramp Rate                         |
| <b>Menu 474 and 475</b> | Deceleration Ramp Rate (effective only in Controlled Stop Mode) |

**i Note**

Excessively fast ramp rates may not have any noticeable effect, since there is a maximum limit at which the VSD may accelerate and decelerate.

To program or change the ramp rates in the VSD, perform the following steps:

1. Enter each of the ramp rates as an amount of frequency change (Hz) versus the time span (seconds) to perform that frequency change. From these entered values, the HMI calculates the actual ramp rate. For example, a 3.0 Hz change every 9 seconds equates to a ramp rate of 1.0 Hz change every 3 seconds. Any frequency adjustments are calculated every second, and the appropriate changes are made by the VSD.
2. When the VSD is started the following frequency changes are performed. The VSD will begin at start frequency and ramp to minimum frequency. Start to minimum ramp rate is defined by Menus 470 [Figure A-24](#) [Menus 460 to 471 \(p. A-25\)](#) and 471.
3. The VSD will then ramp from minimum to target frequency. Minimum to target frequency ramp rate is defined by Menus 472 [Figure A-25](#) [Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) and 473.
4. Once the VSD is at target speed, it will switch to the corresponding mode control ramp rate (in this case the frequency control ramp rate). If the target frequency is subsequently changed to a new target frequency, the VSD will ramp up or down in frequency at the selected control mode ramp rate.
5. Typically, the ramp rate for frequency control is comparatively fast, whereas the ramp rate for PID Control disabled in the Pressure Mode could be much longer, perhaps as slow as 1.0 Hz per day.

**Note**

Menus 474 [Figure A-25 Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) and 475 dictate the stopping ramp rate when the drive is in Controlled Stop Mode (Menu 212 [Figure A-14 Menus 207 to 213 \(p. A-15\)](#)). For more information on stopping see the *Stop Modes* section. Two exceptions exist where the programmed ramp rates will be ignored:

- When the VSD is in the *signal follower* mode (an external source is directly controlling the speed), or
- The VSD is running under PID control in Pressure Control Mode.

## 6.9 Analog Inputs

The HMI is configured to easily connect analog inputs from external sources (usually transducers) for both monitoring and control. These external signals are typically from a tank level sensor, downhole pressure sensor, or downhole temperature sensor. Each input may be configured for

- a voltage level of 0 to 10V or
  - a current level of 4 to 20 mA
- by moving jumper blocks on the HMI Terminal Board.

To configure the inputs for 0 to 10 volts, remove any jumper blocks installed on the board by the relevant input terminal.

To set the input for 4 to 20 mA level, perform the following steps:

1. Install one jumper block, shorting pins 1 and 2 together.
2. Install another jumper block shorting pins 3 and 4 together.

**Note**

Note that the low input side of the analog inputs is directly connected to ground.

3. Once the hardware has been configured for the signal level, the operator interface software also needs to be calibrated for the appropriate input signal. Since all types of transducers have different input parameters corresponding to different output levels, they should each be calibrated with the HMI.

For example, a 0 to 1000 lbf/in<sup>2</sup> pressure transducer may have an output of 4 mA at 0 lbf/in<sup>2</sup> and 20 mA output at 1000 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>. Another pressure transducer may have an output of 4 mA at 0 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>, and an output of 20 mA at 500 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>.

The HMI must be calibrated so that it can operate with correctly scaled units. The ideal way to do this is to

4. Connect the transducer to the HMI.
5. Artificially generate a minimum input parameter (such as a pressure of 0 lbf/in<sup>2</sup>).
6. Calibrate the HMI so that it indicates the appropriate minimum value.
7. Repeat the procedure for the maximum transducer value. From these two calibration points the HMI can internally generate a calibration slope that corresponds to the measured parameter.
8. After the calibration, each measurement is internally compensated using the calculated slope before being displayed, stored, or used for control purposes by the HMI.

---

 **Note**

Many transducers have standard output levels and ranges, plus it is often inconvenient to artificially generate external parameters, so the HMI allows transducers to be easily set up without requiring calibration adjustment.

To set up a transducer without calibrating, perform the following steps:

---

9. Select the transducer type as 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10V and enter a high value (Menu 812 [Figure A-31 Menus 809 to 812 \(p. A-32\)](#)) and a low value (Menu 813 [Figure A-32 Menus 813 to 852 \(p. A-33\)](#)).
10. If the transducer is nonstandard or must be calibrated for some reason, select the calibration menu then perform the calibration at low and high points, entering the desired readouts at each input level.

---

 **Note**

The most accurate readings will be obtained with calibration points that are as far apart as possible from each other (within range at opposite ends of the scale). Each analog input level may be viewed at the bottom of the status screen, if the display is enabled in the analog input menu. The readings are updated approximately once per second.

---

6.10

## Digital Auxiliary Inputs

The operator interface has several digital auxiliary inputs that may be monitored and used for VSD control ( Menu 610–Auxiliary Input Selection) [Figure A-27 Menus 610 to 615 \(p. A-28\)](#). These inputs are typically used to monitor external devices such as vibration sensors, tank fluid-level sensors, or ground faults.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

Before a digital input may be used, it must be configured on the HMI Terminal Board for the correct signal level. Each digital external device must be configured for one of two types of input; logic-level (+/- 5 V) or Relay Contact.

### 6.10.1 Logic-Level (DC +/- 5 V) Input

The logic-level input method allows the external source to supply a 5-volt logic-level signal. This logic level is then used to drive an opto-isolator on the HMI Terminal Board, which isolates the signal from the external source from the HMI circuitry.

To configure the hardware for logic-level input, perform the following steps:

1. Insert a shorting jumper block between Pin 2 and Pin 3 on the proper jumper pins of the HMI Terminal Board.
2. The externally applied 5-volt signal should be applied with the positive voltage (+) on the input marked *high* and the negative (-) or lower voltage to the terminal input marked *low*.

### 6.10.2 Relay Contact Input

A second method of configuring a digital input to the HMI does not require the external device to supply any power, but is rather just a standard switch or relay contact, drawing power from the HMI for operation. To configure the HMI for a relay contact input, perform the following steps:

1. Connect one shorting jumper block between Pin 1 and Pin 2 of the proper jumper pins of the HMI Terminal Board.
2. Connect another shorting block between Pin 3 and Pin 4 on the proper jumper pins of the HMI Terminal Board.



#### Note

Polarity has no effect on the contact input.

---

3. Once the hardware has been configured and connected, the digital input device may then be configured for operation from the HMI.

**Note**

Shutdowns, restarts, and status display all use the term *Active* or *Inactive* to indicate the current state of the device being monitored. *Active* and *Inactive* states may be defined by the user so that *Active* may mean that the external supply is ON or OFF if configured for external logic inputs, or the external contacts may be OPEN or CLOSED. Using this method, the various associated timers and control conditions for each digital auxiliary input do not need to be reprogrammed if the digital input polarity is changed; only the active state must be defined.

## 6.11 Output Relays

The HMI has four relays that can be configured for several output functions (Output 1, 2, 3, and 4 are configured with Menu 320 [Figure A-18 Menus 253 to 320 \(p. A-19\)](#), 321, 322, and 323, respectively). Each relay has a single-pole common, a normally closed contact, and a normally open contact, which are brought out to a terminal block on the HMI Terminal Board. Each relay may be configured for one of the following operations:

- The relay mimics the state of an external digital input that is being supplied to the operator interface.
- The relay echoes the state of one of the four status-display LEDs on the HMI (*Run*, *Hand*, *Off* and *Auto*) which allows for easy connection of extension status lights on the exterior of the VSD cabinet.
- The relay changes state when the VSD detects a pending shutdown condition. The shutdown could be due to several reasons, such as an undercurrent or a digital input that is programmed to shutdown the VSD; it allows an external indicator or alarm to indicate the pending condition.
- The relay activates when a measured parameter is out of the pre-programmed range. These measured parameters can be
  - overpressure
  - underpressure
  - undercurrent or
  - overcurrent.
- The relay activates at a preset time of day.
- The relay activates for a predetermined period of time.
- The relay can be activated or deactivated by SCADA commands, regardless of VSD state or running condition.

**Note**

The relay states are internally filtered on the HMI, so that they will not be updated faster than once per second. This filtering is to prevent damage to external devices caused by relay chattering initiated by quickly changing inputs or signals that hover around relay trip points.

## 6.12 Timers

Most of the warnings and error conditions (faults) that can be detected by the HMI have associated timers. These timers are individually programmed for specific functions and each error or warning condition has its own set of timers that are completely independent from other condition timers. Timers may be classified as

- Ignore-at-Startup
- Activation Delay
- Automatic Restart Delay
- Other Start Delay(s)

For more detailed descriptions of each type of timer, see the following subsections.

### 6.12.1 Ignore-at-Startup Timer

The main purpose of the Ignore-at-Startup timer is for selected monitored parameters (such as well pressure) that require time to resolve to a normal state after the VSD starts. Once the particular parameter has had time to stabilize, the condition is then monitored for shutdowns; however, until the Ignore-at-Startup timer has expired, the shutdown condition is ignored.

For example, setting an Ignore-at-Startup timer for 60 seconds means that the condition may or may not exist during the first 60 seconds after the drive starts. During the initial 60 second, the HMI will completely ignore it. No errors or warnings related to this condition are displayed on the HMI LCD during this time. After this timer has expired, the HMI will start to monitor for shutdown conditions and responds by taking appropriate action.

### 6.12.2 Activation Delay Timer

The Activation Delay Timer is used to time a condition that must continuously exist for a specified duration before the HMI will stop the VSD.

**Private**

For example, the activation delay time for an undercurrent condition may be set to 30 seconds. If the VSD senses an undercurrent condition, the undercurrent must exist continuously for at least 30 seconds before the VSD will stop. The report on the HMI display will read *VSD stopped due to undercurrent*. If the undercurrent condition exists for less than 30 seconds, then goes away, the VSD will not stop. The undercurrent condition may come and go intermittently, but unless it exists for more than 30 seconds continuously, the VSD will keep running. As soon as a condition which can shut down the VSD exists, a warning is displayed on the HMI screen, noting the time remaining before the VSD stops. If the condition disappears, so will the warning. An Activation Delay timer may be set to a minimum time of one (1) second.

### 6.12.3 Automatic Restart Delay Timer

The Automatic Restart Delay timer is used by the HMI to automatically start the VSD after a particular event, such as power being restored or a digital input closing or clearing a shutdown condition. To allow the VSD to automatically restart, the VSD must first be in *Auto* mode, since the VSD will never start automatically if set to the *Hand* or *Off* mode. Then, three additional parameters must be set for an automatic restart to successfully complete.

- The first parameter enables the automatic start after the relevant condition, and it must be set to *Yes* to allow a start. If set to *No*, the VSD will never automatically restart after the condition clears that caused the shutdown. This Yes/No parameter allows automatic starts to be selectively enabled for some conditions and disabled for others. For example, the user may want the system to automatically start after an underpressure shutdown, but remain OFF after an overpressure shutdown.
- The second parameter requires the delay time, called the *Auto Restart Delay* to be set. The *Auto Restart Delay* is the time span (seconds/minutes/hours/days) that the HMI will wait before an automatic restart is attempted. For typical operation, this time may be set from 30 minutes to up to a day or more.
- The last parameter required to successfully initiate an automatic restart is the number of automatic restarts that are allowed before the VSD will stop and remain OFF, changing the control mode of the VSD from *Auto* to *Off*.

For example, an operator may only want a remote VSD (controlled remotely by SCADA input) to attempt to start twice after an undercurrent condition (detrimental to the drive and motor), but may want the VSD to restart 100 times if the shutdowns were caused by low-pressure readings (a more common occurrence in well production, not overly detrimental to the VSD and motor). The maximum number of automatic restarts is set as the *Number of Auto Restarts*.

There is one extra setting that may be used for automatic starts. The underpressure setting may be used to initiate an automatic start, but rather than waiting for the underpressure restart timer to expire, it may be programmed to wait for a measured pressure to reach a user-input value. To set a pressure-triggered automatic start rather than a time-triggered one, set the *underpressure restart type* to *pressure* rather than *time*, and enter a pressure value that when exceeded, will cause the restart.

---

 **Note**

An underpressure is the only condition that may be used for signal-amplitude-based auto restarts.

---

#### 6.12.4

## Other Start Delay Timers

Finally, there are two start delays which are similar to the *Automatic Restart Delays* described in the previous subsection. The first is called the *Auto Start* timer and it is invoked when the operator changes the control mode of the VSD from the *Off* or *Hand* mode to the *Auto* mode. The HMI waits for this auto delay time to expire, then automatically attempts to start the VSD. This timer allows the operator to start the VSD within a predetermined amount of time, for example, allowing the operator time to travel and reach a remote location before the VSD starts.

---

 **Note**

The HMI can also be set to wait for the pressure to reach a predetermined level, if the pressure restart type is set to *pressure* rather than *time*.

---

The last timer is called the *Power Fail* timer. This timer allows the VSD to automatically restart at a specified time after power to the system is restored. When several VSDs are operating from a common power source, each power fail restart timer may be set to a different time. Then, when power is restored, the power source is not overloaded from all the drives starting at the same time. The VSD must be in the *Auto* control mode when the power was lost for the power fail timer to operate; however, it does not matter whether the VSD was running when power was removed. Power fail restarts must be enabled for them to operate. To enable this type of timer, set the *Power Fail* restarts to *Yes* (Menus 205 [Figure A-13 Menus 200 to 206 \(p. A-14\)](#) and 206).

## 6.13 Jump Frequencies

A jump frequency is a frequency range that the VSD is programmed to avoid (Menu 126 [Figure A-4 Menus 123 to 128 \(p. A- 5 \)](#) to 131 [Figure A-5 Menus 129 to 141 \(p. A- 6 \)](#)). This programmable control parameter prevents VSD operation at a frequency that could cause damage to certain equipment combinations, perhaps due to resonance.

For example, a jump frequency of 67.0 Hz with a bandwidth of 2.0 Hz may be entered. By entering this jump frequency, a jump band from 66.0 Hz to 68.0 Hz is created. If the VSD is slowly changing frequency from 60 to 70 Hz, it will slowly speed up until it reaches 65.9 Hz. There, it will pause, depending on the ramp rate and mode selected. Then, the drive will jump to 66.0 Hz, where it will pause before accelerating up to 70 Hz and will avoid running within the jump frequency bandwidth. The user may enter up to three separate jump frequencies and bandwidths. If the jump bands overlap each other, they will have the effect of a larger, single band. If the jump frequencies are not needed, set them to zero (0), which disables them.

## 6.14 Proportional/Integral/Derivative (PID) Control

The VSD HMI has built-in software routines for PID speed control (Menu 182 [Figure A-12 Menus 180 to 185 \(p. A-13\)](#) to Menu 185). PID is used for special applications or speed control that includes some kind of feedback signal from an external source. PID control has three parameters which allow the user to set speed control for their particular application: proportional speed control, integral speed control, and derivative speed control. A typical application is using a VSD to control a pump that fills a tank, and automatically adjusts the VSD frequency to maintain a constant volume of fluid in the tank. PID control may only be used while in the *pressure* speed control mode, although any type of input sensor may be used. A target set point must be established before PID control may be used. The target set point must correspond to the external parameter that the VSD attempts to maintain at a constant level. After setting the target point of the external parameter, the VSD also must be programmed to speed up or slow down if the parameter rises or falls.

For example, if the VSD is driving a pump that is filling a tank, the drive must be configured to function in reverse as compared to a VSD that is being used to empty the tank. When the VSD is started in PID mode, it will initially ramp up to the users normal speed control setting. If the VSD is already running when the speed control mode is changed to PID, it will begin PID control at the present speed. Then, PID control will make the following speed adjustments.

1. The VSD will constantly sample the pressure input, and compare this input to the target set point.
2. From the measured pressure input and the pressure set point it will calculate an error signal (the difference between pressure input and pressure set point).
3. If the signal input is equal to the set point there will be no error, and the VSD will continue to run at the present frequency.
4. Since this does not normally shift the speed point enough to reduce the error signal to zero, another user-programmable parameter called integral speed control is used. Refer to the Integral Speed Control subsection. Otherwise, see Proportional Speed Control.



#### Note

The VSD will internally compensate for unit scale and range differences on the input, calculating the error based on the full-scale range of the input.

6.14.1

### Proportional Speed Control

Proportional speed control operates on the following principles. If there is an error signal (it cannot be zero), the VSD will calculate and change the speed depending on the following:

- The amplitude of the error will be multiplied by the user's programmed setting for *proportional*, and this signal will be applied as an offset to the present frequency.
- The result is that the frequency will change from the present setting in proportion to the size of the error signal.
- As the error signal reduces in amplitude, the speed changes proportionally.
- If the error falls to zero, the speed will return to the previous speed (target set point).

6.14.2

### Integral Speed Control

Integral speed control (sometimes called resets per minute) essentially calculates and resets the running speed point to the present speed by calculating the integral between the two speed differences and smoothly adjusting the speed with respect to time. Rather than resetting the running speed every minute, the HMI continually resets it by adjusting the speed in repeated, diminishing amounts

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

for smoother control. The net effect of integral control is to slowly change the speed incrementally over time, to ensure that the user's selected parameter is maintained at a constant level.

### 6.14.3 Derivative Speed Control

The last parameter is called derivative speed control, and is used to quickly change the VSD frequency to compensate for rapidly changing input signals, such as step changes. For most normal applications, derivative speed control will probably never need to be used.

None of the three PID parameters have units associated with them (they are unitless values). The smallest value that may be programmed for each parameter is zero. Zero has no effect and does not cause any speed control corrections to start.



#### Tip

When setting up a VSD to use PID control, start with small values (for example, less than 5) for the control settings, as it is easy to create an unstable system if large values are used.

Many transducers that may be externally connected to the VSD will only update outputs periodically, so response to changing conditions may be slow. For a more complete description of setting up PID control routines, please consult one of the many books available on the subject. Complete theory and example applications are beyond the scope of this manual.

### 6.15

## Data Log/History Log/Configuration

The data log, when enabled (Menu 244 [Figure A-16 Menus 240 to 245 \(p. A-17\)](#)), will check data (frequency, current, and voltage) at 10– second read intervals and output data at user-specified write intervals (1 minute minimum interval, refer to Menu 245 ). Output data consists of the minimum, maximum, and average values of the data since the last write, as well as when (time/date stamp) the data was written. The only way to view data output is to print it (Menu 248 [Figure A-17 Menus 246 to 252 \(p. A-18\)](#)).

The history log keeps track of all system events, including when the user changes parameters, as well as starts, stops, faults, and a time/date stamp of when each occurred. The history log can be viewed (Menu 111 [Figure A-3 Menus 110 to 119](#)).

122 (p. A-4)) as well as printed (Menu 243 [Figure A-16 Menus 240 to 245 \(p. A-17\)](#)). When viewing the history, the UP/DOWN arrow keys are used to scroll UP/DOWN through the recorded events.

The configuration lists all important system settings in a single place for easy reference. The only way to view the configuration is to print it (Menu 240 [Figure A-16 Menus 240 to 245 \(p. A-17\)](#)).

## 6.16 Printing

Printing is usually performed to save desired information for later review and is done by connecting a serial printer to the front port of the VSD. Then, select the desired information (data log, history log, configuration) for hard copy.

Printing the configuration (Menu 240 [Figure A-16 Menus 240 to 245 \(p. A-17\)](#)) is the easiest since there are no menu items that affect the configuration printout. Before printing the history log (Menu 243), the amount of history to print must be selected. The number of DAYS or EVENTS must be selected (Menu 241) followed by the number of copies (Menu 242) to print. The most recent history events are printed first. For example, if two (2) EVENTS are printed, the most recent history event will be printed first, followed by the next most recent history event.

Before printing the data log (Menu 248 [Figure A-17 Menus 246 to 252 \(p. A-18\)](#)), the amount of data to print must be selected. The number of DAYS or EVENTS must be selected (Menu 246), followed by the number of copies (Menu 247) to print. The most recent data is printed first. For example, if two (2) EVENTS are printed, the most recent data event will be printed first followed by the next most recent data event.

## 6.17 Stop Mode

The HMI may be programmed to stop the VSD in two different modes: *Controlled* and *Coasting* stop (Menu 212 [Figure A-14 Menus 207 to 213 \(p. A-15\)](#)). When the VSD is set for controlled stop, the VSD output frequency and voltage decelerate towards zero until the motor is stopped (Stopping Ramp Rate is set by Menus 474 [Figure A-25 Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) and 475). Most applications will typically be set to use the controlled stop method. When the VSD is set for coasting stop, the VSD output frequency and voltage are effectively disconnected from the motor and the motor coasts to a stop. The coast stop method is typically used for motors that develop a lot of inertia (flywheel effect), such as surface

horizontal pumps where the motor is unable to slow down quickly. In abnormal VSD shutdowns such as emergency stops or power failures, the stop method will usually default to coasting, regardless of the programmed setting.

## 6.18 Internal Temperature

The HMI has a transducer that continuously monitors the internal temperature of the VSD cabinet (Menu 213 [Figure A-14 Menus 207 to 213 \(p. A-15\)](#) and Menu 214 [Figure A-15 Menus 214 to 219 \(p. A-16\)](#)). High and low trip points may be set to prevent the VSD from operating outside a certain range.



### Note

The VSD has additional temperature shutdowns to protect the drive in case of abnormal conditions. These additional shutdowns are not user programmable.

## 6.19 Direct access

Direct access is a method used to adjust preset operating points in the VSD. These operating points are normally not required for standard applications, therefore, direct access to them is not required. For further information, contact Artificial Lift-InTouch for direct access assistance.

## 6.20 Motor/VSD Current Measurement Calibration

The VSD is equipped with current sensing devices for drive output and these devices are factory-calibrated to measure the current in two output phases (this effectively estimates current in the third phase) and calculate an average value for its three-phase output. This computed average is then used by algorithms for all HMI message displays, data logging, and control purposes.

The HMI may also be programmed to use a scaled value of the motor current (measured after the output transformer) rather than the direct VSD output current (Menu 108 [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#)) described in the previous paragraph. Periodically, the VSD current-sensing device must be calibrated to ensure that it is performing to specification. This is especially important when using a scaled value of the motor current. To calibrate the motor current use the following procedure:

1. Start the VSD and ensure it is running with a suitable load.

2. While it is running at a constant current, use a clamp-on type current meter (ammeter) to measure the current in each of the three outgoing phases from the drive to the motor, after the output transformer.
3. These three current measurements may differ somewhat, especially if flat cable is being used, which can cause some imbalance between the phases.
4. Calculate the average of these three measured currents.
5. At the *Motor Current Calibration menu* (Menu 109 [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#)) enter the average motor current just measured.
6. Select current type as *motor* rather than *actual amps* in Menu 108–Amps Display Type [Figure A-2 Menus 105 to 109 \(p. A- 3 \)](#).

All measurements, displays, and control actions now use the scaled motor current rather than the VSD output current. The selection of actual amps or scaled motor current may be changed without losing the *scale factor* values stored in the HMI.



### Note

The HMI performs more accurate calculations if the calibration is performed at a reasonable current level such as the normal running current. Calibrations made with very small currents may introduce scaling errors as the current is increased.

6.21

## Tracking Underload

The HMI has a *Tracking Underload* feature. Once tracking underload is enabled (Menu 151 [Figure A-7 Menus 147 to 151 \(p. A- 8 \)](#)), the HMI keeps a running average of the last few minutes of operation. If the current falls below the preset *percentage of running current* (Menu 152 [Figure A-8 Menus 152 to 163 \(p. A- 9 \)](#)), an underload condition is triggered and the corresponding undercurrent activation timer will start to count down. If the undercurrent condition lasts longer than it takes for the undercurrent activation shutdown timer to expire, the drive will stop. If in the drive is in the *Auto* control mode, the drive may automatically restart at a later time, depending on the standard restart timers and counters.

The purpose of the tracking underload shutdown is to protect motors when the normal underload current is required to be set low enough so that slowly changing currents will not cause nuisance undercurrent trips, but relatively fast current drops (such as those caused by gas locks and broken shafts) may occur. If tracking underload is enabled, the undercurrent activation delay should not be set for longer than a few minutes. The delay should only be for a few

minutes because the average tracking underload level will start to fall during this time and the shutdown condition that triggers the *activation delay* may be cancelled or cleared.

The tracking threshold current level (amps) may be monitored in the main status screen. If the VSD speed changes rapidly, the tracking threshold current level used for tracking underload will be automatically reset and will start to build up from zero again. This prevents nuisance tracking underload shutdowns if, for example, the user changes the target speed while the VSD is running.



#### Note

Setting the tracking underload to a high setting (such as 98%) will result in an almost constant underload ON/OFF condition as the drive current fluctuates above and below the tracking undercurrent level.

6.22

## Graph Printing

The HMI can directly print graphs to hard copy using the standard thermal printer. To configure the HMI for printing and to print a graph, perform the following steps:

1. Plug the printer into the HMI front panel connector (9-pin serial port) then use Menus 250 [Figure A-17 Menus 246 to 252 \(p. A-18\)](#) through 253 [Figure A-18 Menus 253 to 320 \(p. A-19\)](#) to access the graph printing functions. Menu 250 is used to select the item (speed, current or pressure) to be printed.



#### Note

Only one item may be printed at a time.

2. Select the number of previous days to print in Menu 251 [Figure A-17 Menus 246 to 252 \(p. A-18\)](#). These are actual calendar days previous to the present date and include any days when the drive was not running. The graph may be printed for up to the last 100 days, but see the note below.



#### Note

Printing data for an excessive number of days can take considerable time. Be careful to identify a reasonable amount of data (days) that you require before you begin printing.

3. Enter the graph scale size in Menu 253 [Figure A-18 Menus 253 to 320 \(p. A-19\)](#). Graph scale is the height (length) of the axes. If graphing speed, a typical graph scale size may be 75 or 100. If graphing pressure, it may be 5000. The graph's lower axis origin is fixed at zero.

4. Once these items have been entered, start printing by using Menu 253.

Unlike printing data or history, the HMI keyboard and display may be used for other functions during graph printing, so even though graph printing is slow, the operator may perform other functions as the HMI prints.

Another selection in Menu 253 allows the operator to stop the HMI from printing a graph while in process.



#### Note

Most printers have an internal data buffer that may take quite a while to empty once the Stop command has been issued from the HMI. Even after the HMI has stopped sending data to the printer, the printer may still be printing. If this occurs, turn the printer OFF then ON again to empty the printer's internal data buffer.

The graphs display the time and date on the X axis. The parameter (speed, current, or pressure) selected by Menu 250 is displayed on the Y axis. The parameter is printed as a solid vertical line between the minimum and maximum values recorded during each 15 minute interval of the day. Somewhere in the line, you will notice a small gap. This gap is the average value recorded during the 15 minute time interval. If a single dot or line is visible for any 15–minute period, the difference between the minimum, maximum, and average value was too small to be printed on the graph.

## 6.23 Catch a Spinning Motor

Menu 454 [Figure A-22 Menus 347 to 454 \(p. A-23\)](#) allows the user to enable or disable the *Catch a Spinning Motor* function of the VSD. Once enabled, this function analyzes any voltage present at the output of the VSD before starting to determine if a connected motor is still spinning. If it appears that a connected motor is still spinning, the VSD attempts to match the motor speed with an active drive signal to gain control of the motor, then continue to control the motor in whatever mode is programmed by the operator. If the motor is spinning opposite to the required direction, the VSD will slow down the motor, change direction, and accelerate up to the required speed.

The primary use for the *Catch a Spinning Motor* function is to safely start a motor that is being turned backwards by falling fluid in a pump string that has stopped pumping. If this function is enabled, a check valve may no longer be required in some downhole systems or the HMI-programmed time delay required for back-spinning systems to stop before attempting a restart may not be necessary.

6.24

## Base Frequency Voltage Select

Menu 455 [Figure A-23 Menus 455 to 459 \(p. A-24\)](#) allows the user to select different references for the base frequency output voltage settings. Three settings are available: input, auto, and fixed.

Selecting *input* causes the output voltage to fluctuate with any changes on the power input to the VSD, so if the input voltage dropped by 20%, so would the output voltage (if running at the base frequency).

Selecting *auto* causes the VSD to output a fixed base voltage that is determined by the input power voltage to the VSD. The input power voltage is measured when power is first applied to the VSD. The VSD will try to compensate for any changes in the input voltage to maintain a constant base output voltage.

If the base frequency output voltage is set to *fixed*, the operator can manually set a base output voltage using Menu 456 [Figure A-23 Menus 455 to 459 \(p. A-24\)](#), which is independent of both the input voltage and changes to the input voltage.



### Note

If the base frequency output voltage is set to *auto* or *input* Menu 456 has no effect.

6.25

## Start Hertz

Menu 458–Startup Frequency (Hz) [Figure A-23 Menus 455 to 459 \(p. A-24\)](#) allows the user to set the starting frequency of the VSD. The starting frequency is the initial frequency output by the drive when it starts, and may be used to prevent the drive from starting at frequencies below those specified by the output transformer manufacturer. Once started, the drive immediately ramps up from the *Start Hertz* speed to the minimum speed at the rate set by the user in Menus 470–Starting Accel Rate [Figure A-24 Menus 460 to 471 \(p. A-25\)](#) and Menu 471–Minimum to Target Hz.

If a downhole monitoring tool is included in the string to be controlled by the VSD, set the Startup Frequency to 7 Hz.

6.26

## Start-Up Voltage Boost

With this function, the user may enter a value (up to 30%) that will calculate and apply a voltage boost percentage (%) over the normal output voltage during start-up. This boost is only active up to a frequency of 12 Hz. A voltage boost

### Private

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

may help some motors start by supplying additional torque; however, it may also cause overcurrent trips while starting if the boost percentage is set too high. Start-Up Voltage Boost is normally not used for most installations.

6.27

## Volts-per-Hertz Patterns and Vector Control

Volts per Hertz Patterns and Vector Control allow the user to change the method used by the VSD to generate the volts-per-hertz slope during acceleration and speed changes. The standard mode for this function is *constant torque*; however, also available are other modes such as *vector control*, *auto boost*, and *variable* modes, several of which have energy-saving options. Refer to the Toshiba G3 manual for further details of all the possible settings of these modes.

The VSD must be stopped before any of the selections mentioned previously can be changed. The number of motor poles (Menu 462 [Figure A-24 Menus 460 to 471 \(p. A-25\)](#)), the moment of inertia (Menu 461) and the motor horsepower (Menu 850 [Figure A-32 Menus 813 to 852 \(p. A-33\)](#)) must be entered before the vector control modes will operate correctly. Most standard Schlumberger downhole motors are two-pole, some are surface inertia, and some surface systems, such as horizontal pumps may have a large moment of inertia. The VSD uses this information during vector control computations.

6.28

## Acceleration Rate

Menu 470 [Figure A-24 Menus 460 to 471 \(p. A-25\)](#) and Menu 471 can be used to enter the acceleration ramp rate that the VSD will use to accelerate the motor from the starting hertz (Menu 458 [Figure A-23 Menus 455 to 459 \(p. A-24\)](#)) to the minimum drive speed (Menu 122 [Figure A-3 Menus 110 to 122 \(p. A- 4 \)](#)). This rate is entered in a similar manner to the other ramp rates, with separate menu entries for the time and frequency change. Once the minimum speed (Menu 122) has been reached, the VSD changes acceleration rates and uses the minimum to target the hertz rate (set by Menu 472 [Figure A-25 Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) and Menu 473) until one of the control modes (such as *frequency* or *current*) takes control of the speed. These acceleration rates overwrite any settings that may have been previously entered into the VSD using the (Toshiba) handheld keypad.

6.29

## Deceleration Rate

Menu 474 [Figure A-25 Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) and Menu 475 can be used to enter the deceleration ramp rate that the VSD uses when stopping, if the stop mode (Menu 212 [Figure A-14 Menus 207 to 213 \(p. A-15\)](#)) is set to *controlled*.

The deceleration ramp rate is entered in a similar manner to the other ramp rates with separate menu entries for the time and frequency change. This deceleration rate is ignored if the drive is set to stop in *coast-to-stop* mode.



### Note

Fast deceleration rates may cause drive overvoltage trips.

6.30

## Rocking Starts

The VSD may be able to jog or break free a pump and motor that has become seized downhole by using the *Rocking Start* function. The drive performs a rocking start by rapidly rocking (rotating) the motor backward and forward, and will then try to bring the motor up to full operating speed. Menu 500 [Figure A-25](#) [Menus 472 to 500 \(p. A-26\)](#) enables or disables rocking starts, Menu 501 sets the number of *rocks* (forward/backward jogs) and Menu 502 selects the rocking start method.

There are three methods that change the time (duration) the VSD is ON in each direction and the way the VSD changes directions during these rocking attempts. Each method should be tried until one is successful, since the size and type of equipment affects how well rocking starts work. It is possible that the VSD reports overcurrents during rocking start attempts. Rocking starts are only used as a last resort (when downhole equipment may have seized).

In version 2.06 of the HMI software, rocking starts are a one-shot operation (the setting must be enabled before each start). Several InTouch tickets have been published that support the effectiveness of this one-shot software feature.



**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets

Hazard Category: machinery equipment hand tools

It is possible to overstress and damage equipment by attempting to start it with a rocking start or with extremely fast acceleration rates.

6.31

## Forced Frequencies

The VSD has the capability of *forced frequency* control. Menu 510 [Figure A-26](#) [Menus 501 to 512 \(p. A-27\)](#) enables or disables this function. Forcing the frequency allows the VSD to change to an operator-preset speed when a predefined digital input becomes active, effectively (temporarily) overwriting any

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

controlled speed mode that is currently in effect. Once the selected digital input becomes inactive, the speed control reverts to the former setting. This function can be useful in special circumstances, for example, to remotely change the drive speed to fill or empty a tank. Menu 511 sets the force frequency and Menu 512 enables the user to select the digital input that will be used for forced speed control. The normal drive protection such as underloads and overloads are not disabled during forced frequency speed control.

## 6.32 VSD Service Routines

---



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Assets  
Hazard Category: electrical

Only properly trained, qualified (successfully completed the Toshiba 4-day Technical Training for VSDs) personnel should attempt to service the variable speed drives. Failure to comply with this recommendation can cause severe damage to equipment and endanger the person working on the drive and surrounding personnel.

---

Standard Toshiba G3 software routines, such as *Type 3*, *Type 7*, and *Type 255* (with HMI software version 2.06) resets that may be required when servicing a drive can be directly invoked from Menu 999 [Figure A-35 Menus 901 to 999 \(p. A-36\)](#). The Toshiba *SuperUser* mode may also be turned on to operate the VSD without any bus voltage. The drive will drop out of *SuperUser* mode if a trip or fault occurs. The HMI cannot report this fault, since it cannot query the VSD as to the present *SuperUser* state.

---



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel  
Hazard Category: electrical

A trip will be forced if current greater than 50% of the VSD's full load output is detected while in *SuperUser* mode. This mode is strictly for testing and should never be used with bus voltage and a load other than the transformer.

---

The power to the system (both the VSD and the HMI) must be cycled to exit *SuperUser* mode. The VSD must be in OFF mode before any of the service routines can be selected.

**Note**

Since these service routines and several drive tuning routines (such as acceleration and deceleration ramp rates) have been added, the need to use Menu 900 through Menu 904 for writing G3 parameters has diminished. Hence, the write capability of Menu 904—Direct Access has been restricted and now requires a factory code to be entered in Menu 905 to enable writes using the 900-series menus. It is expected that the 900 through 905 menus will be removed entirely in future product releases.

Intentionally Blank

## Installation

|     |                        |       |      |
|-----|------------------------|-------|------|
| 7.1 | Confirmation of Wiring | _____ | 7- 1 |
| 7.2 | HMI Battery            | _____ | 7- 2 |
| 7.3 | Start-Up Test          | _____ | 7- 3 |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 7 INSTALLATION

This chapter describes how to install a Speedstar 2000 VSD on location. Installation procedures for optional and combinable equipment for the Speedstar 2000 (site communications, external inputs or output devices such as transducers) are discussed in the Optional and Combinable Equipment chapter of this manual.



Danger

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives, machinery equipment hand tools

Troubleshooting or servicing a Schlumberger VSD must be performed by qualified personnel. Qualified personnel is defined as those who have attended and successfully completed the Toshiba technical course for industrial drives or Schlumberger equivalent training and have their course reference material on hand. Only then should qualified personnel contact AL InTouch for additional support and troubleshooting/repair instructions.

### 7.1 Confirmation of Wiring

Make the following final checks before applying power to the unit:

1. Confirm that source power is connected to terminals L1(R), L2(S), and L3(T) for a 6-pulse sine wave drive; L1(R), L2(S), L3(T) and L12(R2), L22(S2), L32(T2) for a 12-pulse sine wave drive. Connection of incoming source power to any other terminals will damage the drive.
2. The 3-phase source power should be within the correct voltage and frequency tolerances.
3. The output leads must be connected to terminals T1(U), T2(V), and T3(W).
4. Make sure there are no short circuits or inadvertent grounds and tighten any loose connector terminal screws.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 7.2 HMI Battery

Any time a VSD or an HMI is shipped, the HMI battery should be disconnected. Otherwise, the keyboard encoder may have corrupt data in the battery-backed CMOS.



**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

Connecting the battery, without power applied to the HMI, may discharge the battery. A discharged battery can prevent the HMI from powering up.

Check to make sure the HMI battery is disconnected before powering on the drive. If the HMI battery is disconnected, connect the battery on the HMI (only *after* power is applied). If the battery was connected during shipment, perform the following:

1. Disconnect the battery on the HMI.
2. Wait 10–15 minutes (allows capacitors on the CPU card to discharge and clear the CMOS).
3. Power on the VSD and reconnect the battery.
4. Reset the time and date.

**Note**

The HMI battery location and properly connected configuration is shown in the *HMI p/n 7026495 Interconnect Layout* section of the Wiring chapter in this manual. Align the red dots on the connectors to ensure correct battery connection.

**Note**

Time and date are the only settings or information lost when the battery is disconnected on the HMI.

7.3

## Start-Up Test

**Caution**

Potential Severity: Light  
Potential Loss: Assets  
Hazard Category: electrical

Prior to releasing an electrical drive system for regular operation after installation, the system should be given a start-up test by qualified personnel. This start-up test assures correct operation of the equipment for reasons of reliable and safe performance. It is important to schedule time for a startup test, to conduct it, and document it. Perform start-up testing as described in the *Start-Up and Commissioning* chapter of this manual.

When power is applied for the first time, the drive's parameters are set to default values that may or may not be appropriate for your application. If these settings are not optimal for the application, the desired settings must be programmed before initiating a run. The drive can be operated with no motor connected.

**Note**

Operation with no motor connected or use with a small trial motor is recommended for initial adjustment or for learning to adjust and operate the drive.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# Startup and Commissioning

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| <b>8.1</b> | <b>Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)</b>                 | <b>8- 1</b> |
| 8.1.1      | Required Startup Equipment and Tools   | 8- 1        |
| 8.1.2      | Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                        | 8- 1        |
| <b>8.2</b> | <b>Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)</b>          | <b>8- 3</b> |
| 8.2.1      | Checking Input Diodes (Diodes in the Circuit)  | 8- 3        |
| 8.2.2      | Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                             | 8- 4        |
| 8.2.3      | Main Power Test  | 8- 6        |
| 8.2.4      | HMI Power Supply Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                                      | 8- 7        |
| 8.2.5      | Sequence Tests   | 8- 8        |
| 8.2.6      | Full Output Voltage Test (without motor)   | 8- 8        |
| 8.2.7      | Full Voltage Output (with motor)   | 8- 8        |
| <b>8.3</b> | <b>Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)</b>        | <b>8- 9</b> |
| <b>8.4</b> | <b>Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)</b> | <b>8-10</b> |
| 8.4.1      | Checking Input Diodes  | 8-11        |
| 8.4.2      | Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)                    | 8-11        |
| 8.4.3      | Main Power Test  | 8-13        |
| 8.4.4      | HMI Power Supply Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)                             | 8-14        |
| 8.4.5      | Sequence Tests   | 8-15        |
| 8.4.6      | Full Output Voltage Test (without motor)   | 8-16        |
| 8.4.7      | Full Voltage Output (with motor)   | 8-16        |
| <b>8.5</b> | <b>Commissioning Procedures</b>  | <b>8-17</b> |
| 8.5.1      | Detailed Commissioning/recommissioning Procedure   | 8-17        |
| 8.5.2      | Output Transformer Startup and Check   | 8-18        |
| 8.5.3      | Connecting the VSD to Downhole Equipment   | 8-19        |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

8

# STARTUP AND COMMISSIONING

This chapter describes step-by-step procedures for starting up and commissioning new Speedstar 2000 installations. Some steps are included for equipment that is optional and combinable with Speedstar 2000, where practical. If this manual does not include information for the optional equipment attached to your drive application, refer to the appendices of this manual (specifically reference material and third-party information) for additional information.

8.1

## Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

The procedures in this section should be performed before applying any power to the drive.

8.1.1

### Required Startup Equipment and Tools

Before attempting any startup procedures, ensure that the personnel assigned to the job have the required equipment and tools listed in the VSD Tools Kit (Schlumberger part number 100072064) located in [the Schlumberger Global Engineering Management System \(GeMS\)](#).

The list may also be found and items ordered from [OneCAT \(WCP Product Catalog\)](#).

8.1.2

### Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

Perform the following pre-powerup checks:

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel, Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

Use appropriate lockout/tagout procedures (refer to InTouch ID# 3827719) to ensure that VSD power is OFF before proceeding with the following checks and procedures.

Use a VOM to verify that ALL power is OFF on the VSD, including

- Incoming lines (if unit is a 12-pulse, check two sets of incoming lines) at the bottom of the circuit breaker
- Motor terminals
- The DC bus

1. Verify board numbers, switch settings, and jumper settings are correct for the application and that connections to the proper taps of the CPT(s) are made.
2. Verify all connectors are properly plugged in.
3. Verify that the installation is properly grounded.
4. Verify that the input and output cables for the installation have been properly sized and properly terminated.
5. Verify that the customer interface wiring is properly installed and ready to be connected to the application.
6. Verify that the wiring is properly installed and connected in the motor terminal box.
7. Disconnect the motor leads at the drive output terminals and meg (connect and test with a megohmmeter) the motor and cables.
8. Check the tightness on all cable and bus connections.
9. Check all fuses before power-up. A blown fuse indicates that power has been applied to the drive prior to your arrival.
10. Use a VOM to check the Softstart resistor (refer to the appropriate schematic for resistor value specified on the drawing).
11. Ensure that RTV has been applied to the HMI keypad flexible cable to prevent shorts.
12. Ensure that a Category-5 (CAT5) communication cable has been installed from the HMI to the VSD.
13. Ensure that the HMI contains a lithium battery.

## 8.2 Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

Perform the following procedures to check all components in the main power circuit for proper function:



**Danger**

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives, machinery equipment hand tools

Turn all power OFF before making changes to transformer taps or connecting wires to components.

1. Use a VOM to ensure that the DC bus capacitors have been **completely** discharged.



**Danger**

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Personnel

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

DO NOT trust the LED inside the VSD cabinet to indicate discharge state of the DC bus capacitors.

2. Use a VOM to test the following main circuit components:

- DC bus capacitors-Check the charge and discharge rate of the capacitors and ensure that the charge rate is faster than discharge. Use the diode mode of the VOM to charge the capacitors and DC volts to discharge.
- discharge resistor R2-Manually push in MS2 to take reading (if applicable).

8.2.1

### Checking Input Diodes (Diodes in the Circuit)

This section describes how to test the input diodes (rectifiers) with the diodes installed in their operating circuit. If VOM readings do not display as shown, refer to the Speedstar 2000 Test Procedure (testing the diodes isolated from the circuit). Refer to the table below for values that should be read on the VOM with the diodes in circuit. Use the diode tester function of the VOM.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**Note**

A charging indication on the VOM is caused by the charging action of the DC bus filter capacitors through the forward-biased diode.

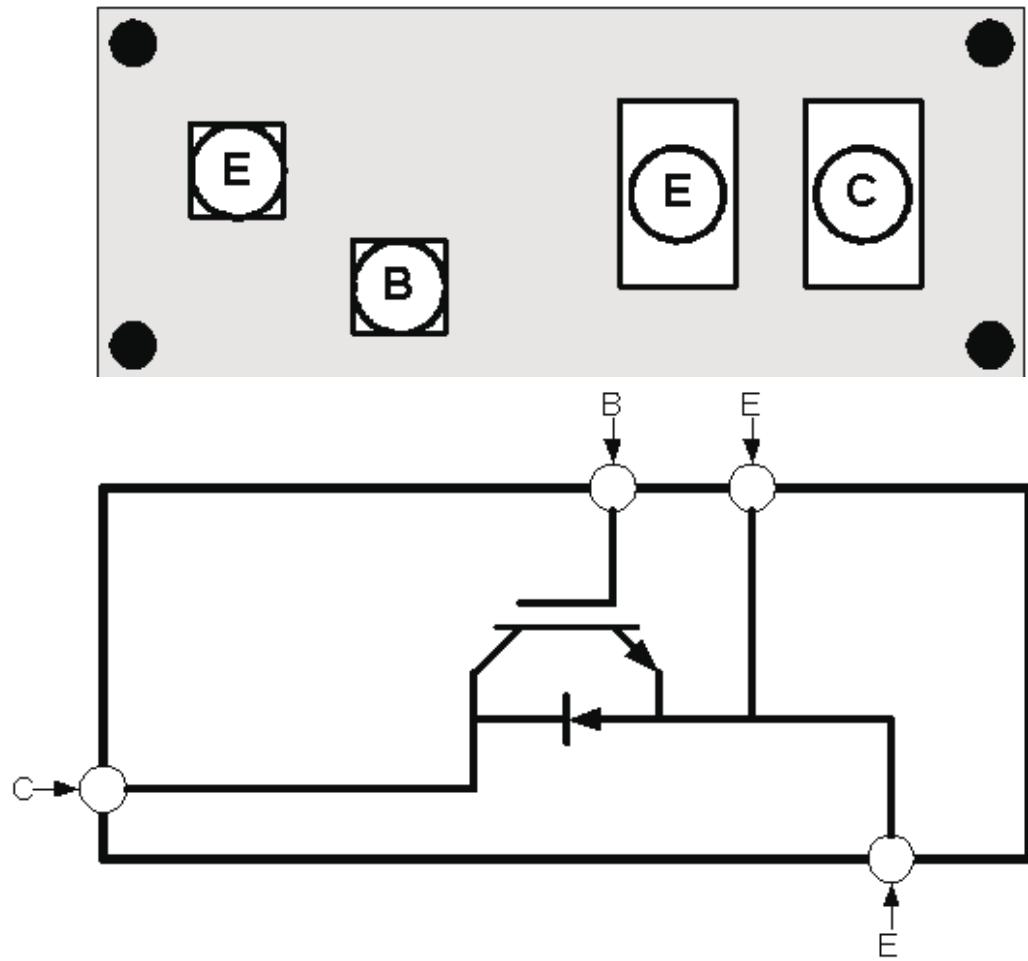
**Table 8-1: Input diode test reading (diode in circuit)**

| Meter (+) | Meter (-) | Reading          |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|
| DC Bus +  | Input R   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input S   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input T   | Charging         |
| Input R   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input S   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input T   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input R   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input S   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input T   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input R   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input S   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input T   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |

## 8.2.2 Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

This section gives step-by-step procedures on how to test a single-transistor type IGBT.

1. Attach the VOM leads as shown in the corresponding schematic and table.



**Figure 8-1: Single-Transistor IGBT Block Diagram and Schematic  
(module MG500Q1US11 shown)**

| Meter Lead Connection Points |     | Meter Display |
|------------------------------|-----|---------------|
| NEG                          | POS | reading       |
| C                            | E   | 0.2 to 0.6    |
| E                            | C   | OL (charging) |
| B                            | C   | OL (charging) |
| C                            | B   | OL (charging) |
| B                            | E   | OL (charging) |
| E                            | B   | OL (charging) |

2. Ensure that the VOM readings match or approximate those shown in the Single-Transistor Test Connection Points and Values table.

### 8.2.3 Main Power Test

Perform the following test to make sure the drive's power supplies are functioning properly.

1. Completely reassemble the drive.
2. Turn main power ON.
3. Refer to the following block diagram of the VSD Terminal Board and table of Control Power Supplies Test Points and Readings. Check and ensure that all power supplies are working properly.



**Warning**

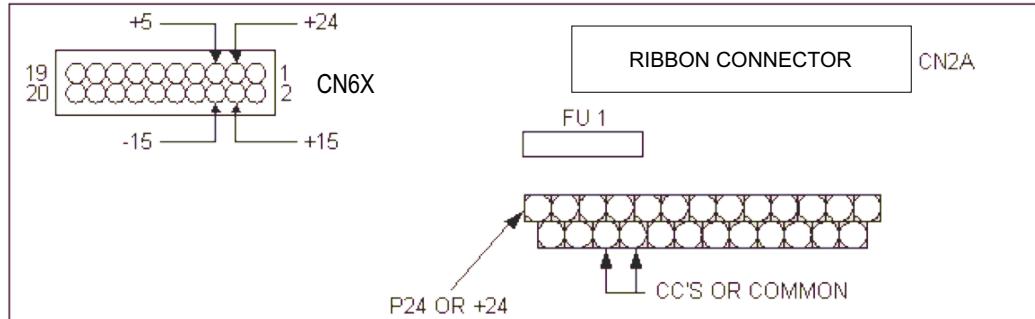
Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

DO NOT touch pins on the VSD Terminal Board together. Use a test adapter plug (refer to the Required Startup Equipment and Tools list) to ensure pins and test leads do not contact each other.

Use a VOM to check the power supplies (+5 V, +15 V, -15 V, +24 V).



**Figure 8-2: VSD Terminal Board (control power test points)**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +15                             | 14.4 to 15.6                            | CN6X-4           | Terminal CC       |
| -15                             | -14.4 to -15.6                          | CN6X-6           | Terminal CC       |
| +5                              | 4.8 to 5.2                              | CN6X-5           | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | TERM P24         | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | CN6X-3           | Terminal CC       |

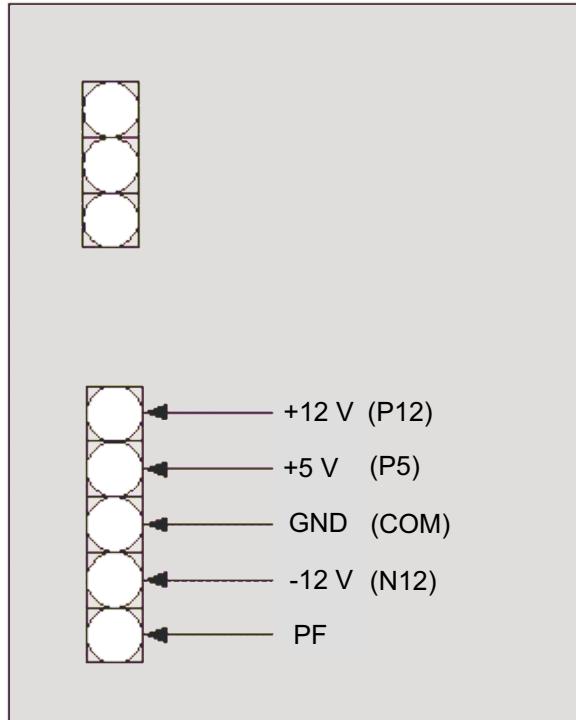
## 8.2.4 HMI Power Supply Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

Perform the following checks while referring to the HMI Power Supply Block Diagram and HMI Power Supply Voltages table. Ensure that the power supplies are providing the proper voltages to ground (COM) within the permissible range as shown in [Figure 8-3 HMI Power Supply Block Diagram](#) and the accompanying table.



### Note

The HMI Power Supply/Power Fail Board are usually located either in the left panel of the drive enclosure or the top (ceiling) of the enclosure.



**Figure 8-3: HMI Power Supply Block Diagram**

**Table 8-2: HMI Power Supply Voltages**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +12                             | approx. +12                             | P12              | COM               |
| +5                              | approx. +5                              | P5               | COM               |
| -12                             | approx. -12                             | N12              | COM               |

## 8.2.5 Sequence Tests

The following tests are performed to ensure that the drive's timed and monitored sequences occur according to specification.

1. Test all applicable sequences for the VSD you are starting up (MST, MS2, MS1, blown-fuse indicator, door-switch interlock, fan circuit, etc).
2. Program the operating, alarm, and trip parameters into the drive.

## 8.2.6 Full Output Voltage Test (without motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation without a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Run the drive at 10 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
2. Run the drive up to 60 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
3. Turn power OFF.

## 8.2.7 Full Voltage Output (with motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation with a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Ensure all power is OFF. Connect the motor leads to the drive output lugs.

2. Apply power and run the drive at 10 Hz. Monitor load current on the front (HMI) display.
3. Run the drive up to 60 Hz.
4. Use clamp-on ammeters to check for balanced current between U, V, and W outputs to the motor windings. Monitor the drive performance for a reasonable period of time to ensure proper operation.

8.3

## Pre-Powerup Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

Perform the following checks before applying any power to the drive.



|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Potential Severity: | Major                  |
| Potential Loss:     | Personnel, Reputation  |
| Hazard Category:    | electrical, explosives |

Use appropriate lockout/tagout procedures (refer to InTouch ID# 3827719) to ensure that VSD power is OFF before proceeding with the following checks and procedures.

Use a VOM to verify that ALL power is OFF on the VSD, including

- Incoming lines (if unit is a 12-pulse, check two sets of incoming lines) at the bottom of the circuit breaker
- Motor terminals
- The DC bus

1. Verify board numbers, switch settings, and jumper settings are correct for the application and that connections to the proper taps of the CPT(s) are made.
2. Verify all connectors are properly plugged in.
3. Verify that the installation is properly grounded.
4. Verify that the input and output cables for the installation have been properly sized and properly terminated.
5. Verify that the customer interface wiring is properly installed and ready to be connected to the application.
6. Verify that the wiring is properly installed and connected in the motor terminal box.
7. Disconnect the motor leads at the drive output terminals and meg (connect and test with a megohmmeter) the motor and cables.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

8. Check the tightness on all cable and bus connections.
9. Check all fuses before power-up. A blown fuse indicates that power has been applied to the drive prior to your arrival.
10. Use a VOM to check the Softstart resistor (refer to the appropriate schematic for resistor value specified on the drawing).
11. Ensure that RTV has been applied to the HMI keypad flexible cable to prevent shorts.
12. Ensure that a Category-5 (CAT5) communication cable has been installed from the HMI to the VSD.
13. Ensure that the HMI contains a lithium battery.

8.4

## Main Power Circuit Checks for Initial Startup of Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

Perform the following procedures to check all components in the main power circuit for proper function:



Danger

Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation  
 Hazard Category: electrical, explosives, machinery equipment hand tools

Turn all power OFF before making changes to transformer taps or connecting wires to components.

- 
1. Use a VOM to ensure that the DC bus capacitors have been **completely** discharged.



Danger

Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

DO NOT trust the LED inside the VSD cabinet to indicate discharge state of the DC bus capacitors.

- 
2. Use a VOM to test the following main circuit components:

- DC bus capacitors-Check the charge and discharge rate of the capacitors and ensure that the charge rate is faster than discharge. Use the diode mode of the VOM to charge the capacitors and DC volts to discharge.

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

- discharge resistor R2-Manually push in MS2 to take reading (if applicable).

#### 8.4.1 Checking Input Diodes

This section describes how to test the input diodes (rectifiers) with the diodes installed in their operating circuit. If VOM readings do not display as shown, refer to the Speedstar 2000 Test Procedure (testing the diodes isolated from the circuit). Refer to the table below for values that should be read on the VOM with the diodes in circuit. Use the diode tester function of the VOM.



##### Note

A charging indication on the VOM is caused by the charging action of the DC bus filter capacitors through the forward-biased diode.

**Table 8-3: Input diode test reading (diode in circuit)**

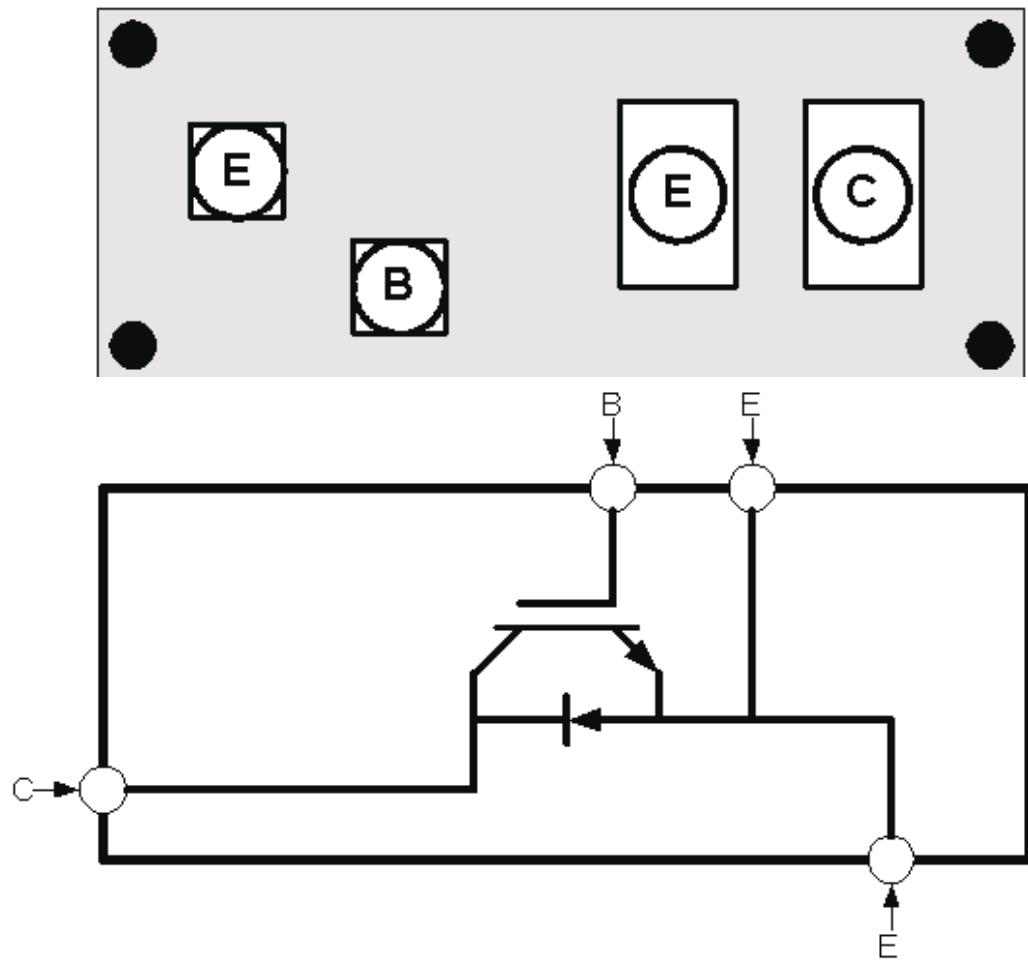
| Meter (+) | Meter (-) | Reading          |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|
| DC Bus +  | Input R   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input S   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input T   | Charging         |
| Input R   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input S   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input T   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input R   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input S   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input T   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input R   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input S   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input T   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |

#### 8.4.2

#### Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

This section gives step-by-step procedures on how to test a single-transistor type IGBT.

1. Attach the VOM leads as shown in the corresponding schematic and table.



**Figure 8-4: Single-Transistor IGBT Block Diagram and Schematic  
(module MG500Q1US11 shown)**

| Meter Lead Connection Points |     | Meter Display |
|------------------------------|-----|---------------|
| NEG                          | POS | reading       |
| C                            | E   | 0.2 to 0.6    |
| E                            | C   | OL (charging) |
| B                            | C   | OL (charging) |
| C                            | B   | OL (charging) |
| B                            | E   | OL (charging) |
| E                            | B   | OL (charging) |

2. Ensure that the VOM readings match or approximate those shown in the Single-Transistor Test Connection Points and Values table.

### 8.4.3 Main Power Test

Perform the following test to make sure the drive's power supplies are functioning properly.

1. Completely reassemble the drive.
2. Turn main power ON.
3. Refer to the following block diagram of the VSD Terminal Board and table of Control Power Supplies Test Points and Readings. Check and ensure that all power supplies are working properly.



**Warning**

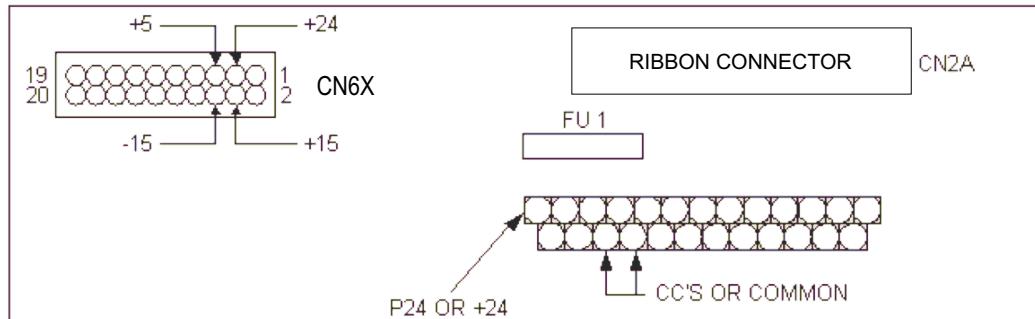
Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

DO NOT touch pins on the VSD Terminal Board together. Use a test adapter plug (refer to the Required Startup Equipment and Tools list) to ensure pins and test leads do not contact each other.

Use a VOM to check the power supplies (+5 V, +15 V, -15 V, +24 V).



**Figure 8-5: VSD Terminal Board (control power test points)**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +15                             | 14.4 to 15.6                            | CN6X-4           | Terminal CC       |
| -15                             | -14.4 to -15.6                          | CN6X-6           | Terminal CC       |
| +5                              | 4.8 to 5.2                              | CN6X-5           | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | TERM P24         | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | CN6X-3           | Terminal CC       |

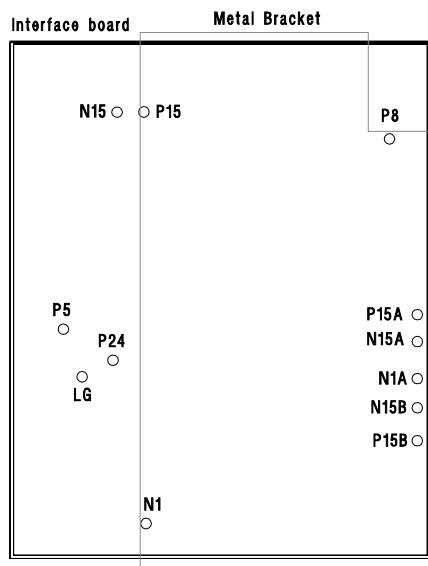
4. Also check the voltages in the VSD Interface Board voltage readings table and Interface Board test points diagram that follows.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**Table 8-4: VSD Interface Board voltage readings**

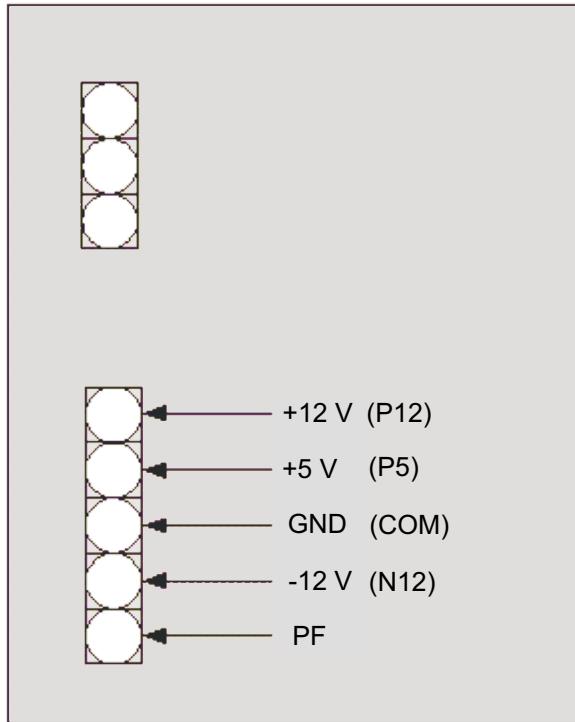
| Positive (+) Meter Lead | Negative Meter Lead (-) | Reading           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| P24                     | LG                      | 21 ~ 27 Vdc       |
| P15                     | LG                      | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15                     | LG                      | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |
| P8                      | LG                      | 6 ~ 10 Vdc        |
| P5                      | LG                      | 4.8 ~ 5.2 Vdc     |
| P15A                    | N1A                     | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15A                    | N1A                     | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |
| P15B                    | N1                      | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15B                    | N1                      | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |

**Figure 8-6: Interface Board test points****8.4.4****HMI Power Supply Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)**

Perform the following checks while referring to the HMI Power Supply Block Diagram and HMI Power Supply Voltages table. Ensure that the power supplies are providing the proper voltages to ground (COM) within the permissible range as shown in [Figure 8-7 HMI Power Supply Block Diagram](#) and the accompanying table.

**i Note**

The HMI Power Supply/Power Fail Board are usually located either in the left panel of the drive enclosure or the top (ceiling) of the enclosure.



**Figure 8-7: HMI Power Supply Block Diagram**

**Table 8-5: HMI Power Supply Voltages**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +12                             | approx. +12                             | P12              | COM               |
| +5                              | approx. +5                              | P5               | COM               |
| -12                             | approx. —12                             | N12              | COM               |

#### 8.4.5 Sequence Tests

The following tests are performed to ensure that the drive's timed and monitored sequences occur according to specification.

1. Test all applicable sequences for the VSD you are starting up (MST, MS2, MS1, blown-fuse indicator, door-switch interlock, fan circuit, etc).

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

2. Program the operating, alarm, and trip parameters into the drive.

8.4.6

## Full Output Voltage Test (without motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation without a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Run the drive at 10 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
2. Run the drive up to 60 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
3. Turn power OFF.

8.4.7

## Full Voltage Output (with motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation with a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Ensure all power is OFF. Connect the motor leads to the drive output lugs.
2. Apply power and run the drive at 10 Hz. Monitor load current on the front (HMI) display.
3. Run the drive up to 60 Hz.
4. Use clamp-on ammeters to check for balanced current between U, V, and W outputs to the motor windings. Monitor the drive performance for a reasonable period of time to ensure proper operation.

## 8.5 Commissioning Procedures

### 8.5.1 Detailed Commissioning/recommissioning Procedure

To load the default operating parameters for a pumping application (whether ESP, HPS, or PCP) the VSD must be commissioned. Although the overall process is the same in both sections, this section offers a more detailed description of how to commission or recommission a VSD than the previous Quick Operating Procedures.

Commissioning the VSD is accomplished by performing the following:

1. Access the **COMMISSION VSD** (Menu 101) and entering **YES**.
2. You are then prompted to confirm that you want to commission the drive. Entering **YES** at the confirmation screen will enable the commissioning mode.

---

#### Note

In some cases, Master Password level maybe required to enter the **recommissioning** (if the drive is being recommissioned after a previous application) mode.

---

---

#### Note

Recommissioning will change all drive settings to default settings. Print or download configuration files. These files will be needed later.

---

---

#### Note

Once the commissioning mode is enabled, the only way to exit is to finish the commissioning and accept the entries. Even cycling power to the unit cannot exit the commissioning mode. If commissioning was in progress when a power loss occurs, when power is restored, the VSD will automatically return to the first commissioning menu.

---

3. When in commissioning mode, two menus are available. The first menu allows the user to choose the appropriate language (English, Spanish, Russian) and the second menu is to choose the pump application (ESP, PCP, HPS).

4. Choose the pump application for which the VSD will be used.
5. Once the pump application has been entered, the defaults for that application will be loaded and additional commissioning menus for that application are available.

---

 **Note**

Note that the defaults (loaded at the factory) for the VSD are only meant to provide a safe mode so the drive can be run without a load to ensure that it is functioning properly. Many of the VSD settings must be set for each application.

The commissioning menus function in almost the same manner as the normal operating menus. The menu navigation, help, and data entry functions all operate the same as the normal menus, but menu shortcuts are disabled.

6. When the desired values have been entered for each commissioning item, selecting *ACCEPT ENTRIES* on the *EXIT SCREEN CHOICE* menu will exit the commissioning menu and automatically display the status screen.
7. The VSD is now commissioned and in normal operating mode.

#### 8.5.2

## Output Transformer Startup and Check

Perform the following steps to verify that the output transformer is functioning properly:

1. Set the output transformer for the correct output voltage for your application.
2. Connect the transformer to the VSD.
3. Turn ON the main circuit breaker (MCB1).
4. Start the VSD and check for proper operation of the VSD and transformer.
  - a. The output voltages measured at the transformer should be balanced at +/- 2%.

---

**i Note**

Incorrect voltages may appear if the VSD is in any mode other than *Constant* (Menu 460).

---

---

**i Note**

Remember, a voltage filter (p/n 1229053) must be used to register accurate readings from the transformer, if there is no filter connected. Sine wave drives and VSDs with a filter connected do not require the voltage filter.

---

- b. If no voltage filter is used, the voltages will read high and will be non-linear.
5. Stop the VSD after confirming correct output voltages at the output transformer.
6. Turn OFF the main circuit breaker (CB1).

### 8.5.3 Connecting the VSD to Downhole Equipment

Once the HMI, the VSD, and the output transformer are verified, perform the following steps to connect the drive to downhole equipment, start it up, and check for proper operation.

1. Verify that all downhole equipment has been checked out before and after being run in the hole. Verify motor resistances (phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground) are correct.
2. Connect the VSD output cables to the downhole equipment at the wellhead.
3. Turn ON the main circuit breaker.
4. Start the VSD.
5. Perform a calibration on the amperage monitoring components of the VSD (Menu 109, or refer to Motor/VSD Current Calibration section of the Operator Interface chapter of this manual).
6. Reset the underload, target, and overload current settings of the VSD.
7. If the artificial lift system is equipped with pressure monitoring equipment, the VSD must be calibrated to the pressure transducers providing the output signal.
8. Once all external signals and subsystems have been connected to the drive, run the drive for a reasonable period of time to confirm proper operation and that no faults or shut downs occur.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

9. Download configuration/history/data for future reference.



**Caution**

Potential Severity: Light

Potential Loss: Assets

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

Depending upon the type of external devices connected to the VSD and their function, it may be best to test drive shutdowns and other conditions with only the transformer connected to minimize wear and tear on the downhole equipment.

# Optional and Combinable Equipment

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| <b>9.1</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment</b>                                   | <b>9- 1</b> |
| 9.1.1      | Physical connection                                      | 9- 1        |
| 9.1.1.1    | Preparing Cable for Connection to TB2 (3-Terminal Block) | 9- 2        |
| 9.1.1.2    | Temporary SCADA Connection                               | 9- 3        |
| 9.1.2      | Logical Connection                                       | 9- 3        |
| 9.1.3      | Modbus Protocol Features                                 | 9- 3        |
| 9.1.3.1    | Exception Response                                       | 9- 4        |
| 9.1.3.2    | Request Packet Processing                                | 9- 4        |
| 9.1.4      | Broadcast Acceptance Control                             | 9- 5        |
| 9.1.4.1    | Enabled  | 9- 5        |
| 9.1.4.2    | Date/Time  | 9- 5        |
| 9.1.4.3    | Disabled   | 9- 5        |
| 9.1.5      | Modbus Register Addressing                               | 9- 5        |
| 9.1.6      | Modbus Address Map                                       | 9- 7        |
| 9.1.7      | SCADA Messages   | 9-14        |
| <b>9.2</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment Installation</b>                      | <b>9-17</b> |
| <b>9.3</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment Operation</b>                         | <b>9-18</b> |
| <b>9.4</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment Commissioning</b>                     | <b>9-18</b> |
| <b>9.5</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment Maintenance</b>                       | <b>9-19</b> |
| <b>9.6</b> | <b>SCADA Equipment Troubleshooting</b>                   | <b>9-19</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

9

## OPTIONAL AND COMBINABLE EQUIPMENT

This chapter discusses basic connection as well as how to start up and troubleshoot equipment that is external to the VSD or SWD. Data acquisition and remote access equipment, such as SCADA systems, are optional for VSDs and must be specified and ordered for the individual application. Every attempt to include complete information about available (Schlumberger-recommended) options for the VSD has been made. However, very detailed theory and complex troubleshooting techniques for optional equipment are beyond the scope of this manual. Where applicable, a reference or link to additional reference material for optional equipment is included in this manual.

9.1

### SCADA Equipment

If the VSD you are installing or servicing is configured for remote data acquisition or control, SCADA (supervisory control and data acquisition) equipment is connected to the drive. This section describes how the equipment is physically and logically connected to the VSD.

9.1.1

#### Physical connection

The VSD HMI has been equipped with an input/output port for the purposes of Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) functions. The port connectors are located in the top right hand corner of the HMI Interface board, as you face the back of the unit (COM 1). Two connectors are provided to facilitate two interface options. The signals on both connectors conform to the RS485 standard. Both connectors are wired to the same driver circuit. Independent use of both connectors is not possible.

The upper communications connector (TB2) is a three-position screw terminal block designed for direct connection to shielded, twisted-pair copper wire. This type of cabling is commonly used for multi-drop communications. The RS485 standard recommends a linear bus topology, which is best implemented by daisy-chaining cable to each connected device. Each loop of cable should have the outer insulation removed over a 4 to 6 in length of the cable.

The shielding and conductor should be severed to produce a complete electrical break in the shielding.

**Note**

Only ground the shield at one end.

---

Following this grounding procedure from the beginning to the end of the cable will eliminate the possibility of ground currents flowing between devices.

---



**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets

Hazard Category: electrical

High potentials exist within variable speed drives and sine wave drives and other equipment of its type. Unexpected ground currents can be high enough to damage connected devices.

---

**Note**

Some cable connections may require termination resistor(s), depending upon your application. Be sure to consult current RS485 and Modbus literature to confirm proper installation and use of termination resistors.

---

#### 9.1.1.1

### Preparing Cable for Connection to TB2 (3-Terminal Block)

Once the outer insulation and shielding has been removed and/or prepared, the data transmission pair should be separated from one another and their polarity determined. The individual conductors of the data transmission pair are known as positive (+) and negative (-). All devices on the same wire must have their positive connector connected to the positive conductor. The same is true for the negative conductor and negative connector. To prepare the data transmission conductors for connection to the three-terminal screw block, perform the following steps:

1. Remove the insulation from the middle of the exposed conductor. It is recommended that the conductor remain intact to preserve the integrity of the data transmission bus. Remove approximately 3/4 of an inch of insulation.
2. Bend (or fold) the conductor 180 deg, with the bend occurring at the midpoint of the exposed conductor.
3. Align the insulated portions of the conductor to maximize the available exposed conductor.
4. Twist the folded conductor to form a single conductor and connect to the proper terminal (+ or -) of the three terminal screw block.

### 9.1.1.2 Temporary SCADA Connection

For installations that require temporary connection, or are point-to-point in nature, a DB-9F connector can be used to mate with the DB9-M connector provided. Additional handshaking signals are available on the DB-9M connector. These signals include CTS/RTS and DSR/DTR. At the present time, the Modbus Driver software does not support or require the use of these signals. Should your application require the use of one or more of these handshake signaling lines, please contact Artificial Lift InTouch. The port can be configured for RS485 4-wire or RS232. Please contact InTouch for instructions detailed instructions.

### 9.1.2 Logical Connection

The VSD and SWD HMI SCADA port (COM 1) conforms to the Modbus-RTU Protocol Standard, as defined by the *Modicon Modbus Protocol Reference Guide*, publication PI-MBUS-300 Rev. C (January 1991) published by Modicon Inc. This information may also be located at the following web site:[http://www.modicon.com/techpubs/TechPubNew/PI\\_MBUS\\_300.pdf](http://www.modicon.com/techpubs/TechPubNew/PI_MBUS_300.pdf).

The information contained in the *Modbus Protocol Reference Guide* is sufficient in detail for the task of implementing the software drivers that send and receive Modbus Packets. Many off-the-shelf products exist to provide a software interface to be able to communicate with the VSD at the packet level of Modbus-RTU. These software packages run on a standard IBM-compatible computer under a variety of operating systems.

The remainder of this document describes the features of the protocol that have been implemented for Schlumberger VSDs and SWDs, and the semantics of what is sent to and from the drive by way of the Data Highway provided by the physical and logical layers of the Modbus-RTU protocol.

### 9.1.3 Modbus Protocol Features

The Modbus protocol (rules) requires that each device on a physical network be assigned a unique address. This unique address is assigned using Menu 341. The Modbus Device Address of the variable speed drive or sine wave drive can be changed to any valid value using the HMI keypad on the front of the drive. Once configured, the drive will respond to that address until

- the address is changed
- SCADA access is suspended by a user at the keypad interface, or

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

- SCADA communications are disabled from the SCADA communication port.

#### 9.1.3.1

### Exception Response

The VSD or SWD HMI Modbus Protocol implementation provides full exception response support. In the event that the drive receives a request containing an invalid command or an invalid register address, an exception response is generated by the drive and returned to the requesting Modbus Master. In the event that a valid command is received, containing a valid register address but contains an invalid or out-of-range value, no exception response is generated. The control software in the VSD performs data validation on any requested parameter change, whether from the front-panel keypad or from the SCADA interface. In the event that a requested parameter change is invalid, it is rejected and the original value is retained. On a subsequent request to read the same register that the invalid value was previously sent, the original, unchanged value is reported.

Since the drive automatically rejects attempts to change register values outside of its default or user-programmed acceptance limits, it is not necessary to range-limit or restrict data values that are requested or manipulated through the use of various Graphic User Interface (GUI) builders such as Wonderware's InTouch™ product. This user-programmed method of setting an individual drive's acceptance limits speeds the software development of the master side of a SCADA system, since customization of individual slave devices is not needed.

#### 9.1.3.2

### Request Packet Processing

Modbus request packet processing begins upon receipt of a properly framed data packet that is addressed either to the individual SCADA device (such as a VSD) via its Modbus Device Address, or a packet that is addressed to Device Zero (0x00). Packets that are addressed to Device Zero are broadcast packets, which are processed by all devices on the physical network. Responses to broadcast packets are not returned to the master via the physical network. Commands received by a specified device always return a response to the master.

If an exception response is generated from a packet arriving at an individual drive's SCADA port, the response is generated by an exception condition, and processing of the received request packet is terminated. For this reason *Invalid Value* responses are not generated by the drive, since one bad value in the middle of a multiple-register write command would result in a partial update being performed. Instead, all writes are attempted, and the HMI control software handles the job of data validation.

### 9.1.4 Broadcast Acceptance Control

The drive's HMI allows operator control of Modbus broadcast acceptance using the HMI keypad. The receiving of modbus broadcast messages can only be *enabled* through the drive's HMI keypad. (Broadcast acceptance control may become available through SCADA in a future version.) There are three modes of operation of broadcast acceptance: enabled, date/time, and disabled.

#### 9.1.4.1 Enabled

In the *enabled* mode, the VSD will accept and process *all* commands that are transmitted as a broadcast. In the case that the same parameter on multiple drives must be simultaneously changed to the same value (i.e., Master Shutdown Command or Date/Time Settings) then a packet containing the proper address and data value(s) should be sent with the device address set to zero (0x00). There will be no response by individual VSDs to a broadcast.

#### 9.1.4.2 Date/Time

In the *date/time* mode, only the ACA compatible Date/Time set command will be accepted if it is sent as a broadcast write command. All other broadcast commands will be rejected and not processed. For the drive to process an ACA compatible Date/Time set command, it must be a broadcast. If an ACA compatible Date/Time set, or check command is sent to a specific drive, it will be rejected as an invalid register address. This rule holds true at all times.

#### 9.1.4.3 Disabled

The *disabled* mode is provided for mixed networks (where VSDs are not the only kind of device on the same network). In this situation, a broadcast intended for a device other than a VSD can possibly corrupt information, or change the operating state of the drive. To protect against this undesirable effect, the ability to ignore commands sent as broadcasts is provided.

### 9.1.5 Modbus Register Addressing

The Modbus protocol was designed to accommodate various Processes Controllers, specifically Modicon developed devices. Within the Modicon memory model, there are four distinct address spaces:

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| (0xxxx) Coils           | (1xxxx) Inputs            |
| (3xxxx) Input Registers | (4xxxx) Holding Registers |

Four command groups are associated with the four address spaces.

### **eg Example**

Within the context of this manual, the sequences of the letter x can be three (xxx) or four (xxxx) digits long, and is noted as (xxx(x)). This notation allows for the ambiguous notation of 40001 and 4001 resulting in the same holding register, which is the first holding register and is at address 0x0000.

*Commands 01, 05 and 15 refer to coils, and map as follows:*

0x0000 -> 00001, 0x0001 -> 00002, ... , 0x270E -> 09999

*Command 02 refers to inputs, and maps as follows:*

0x0000 -> 10001, 0x0001 -> 10002, ... , 0x270E -> 19999

*Command 04 refers to input registers, and maps as follows:*

0x0000 -> 30001, 0x0001 -> 30002, ... , 0x270E -> 39999

*Commands 03, 06 and 16 refer to holding registers, and map as follows:*

0x0000 -> 40001, 0x0001 -> 40002, ... , 0x270E -> 49999

With this arrangement, the command implies the Most Significant Nibble of a 19– or 20-bit address, and the remaining sixteen bits are specified in the command's data field. This bit arrangement allows a total of 262,140 addresses to be specified in the Modbus address space versus the 39,996 addresses possible with their *paged decimal* notation.

The side effect of this arrangement is that the address 0x0010 is ambiguous since it specifies any of: coil #17, input #17, and input register #17 or holding register #17.

Address ambiguity does not exist in the VSD's and SWD's memory because of designers limiting the addressed address space to 65,536 possible values and assigning unique address ranges to groups of functions, such that the intersection of each set of addresses with the others is the null set.

addresses 101..114 (0x065..0x072) correspond to Modicon aliases 00102..00115

addresses 121..139 (0x079..0x08B) correspond to Modicon aliases 10122..10140

addresses 201..225 (0x0C9..0xE1) correspond to Modicon aliases 30202..30226

addresses 251..289 (0x0FB..0x121) correspond to Modicon aliases 40252..40290

This address-limitation scheme seems to allow for any of the *read* commands to be used to access the data contained in the sine wave drive addresses; however, there is specific type information associated with each address range. Therefore, any Modbus implementation must restrict the allowed address range for a given function.

If properly constructed, it is possible to allow the addresses in the coil segment of memory to overlap into the input segment, since they are distinct commands. That is, if coil addresses need space beyond address 00121, this does not pose a problem from the protocol standpoint.

It does, however, pose a significant issue with regard to internal address or data item assignment. Logic must be employed to either resolve the supplied addresses into the Modicon aliases, thus regenerating the leading 0, 1, 3, or 4, or defining distinct translation tables.

The latter case from above has been implemented in the Modbus protocol handler constructed for the VSD and SWD HMI. In version 1.00 and beyond of the HMI software, each command implies a unique address space. Although the current version of Modbus register mapping contains no duplicate addresses, future versions of the VSD and SWD HMI software may contain duplicate address values for separate commands. It is strongly suggested that applications, which can utilize five-character aliases, be configured to do so.

### 9.1.6 Modbus Address Map

The following table lists the memory addresses on the HMI that are used for SCADA Modbus communications.

**Table 9-1: Modbus Addresses in HMI Memory.**

**Note**

The following terms are used in the Modbus Address table:

1. mom indicates a momentary contact.
2. Items with a minimum value of 99 are unused in this implementation. This value will be returned if the item is queried.
3. Auxiliary analog and digital input queries listed may not correspond to available hardware connected to the drive. Digital output sets/queries listed may not correspond to available hardware connected to the drive.
4. Addresses for which the write command and broadcast write command are listed as n/a indicate a read-only value.
5. Addresses for which the read command and write command are listed as n/a indicate a broadcast-update-only variable.

\* Denotes commands/addresses only available with HMI software version 2.06.

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>                          |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| 00102        | 101          | 0065                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 1 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00103        | 102          | 0066                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 2 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00104        | 103          | 0067                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 3 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00105        | 104          | 0068                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 4 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00106        | 105          | 0069                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 5 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00107        | 106          | 006A                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 6 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00108        | 107          | 006B                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 7 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00109        | 108          | 006C                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Aux Digital 8 Trip Level (1 open, 0 closed) |
| 00110        | 109          | 006D                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Start Drive (0 no action, 1 start)    |
| 00111        | 110          | 006E                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Stop Drive (0 no action, 1 stop)      |

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>                                    |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| 00112        | 111          | 006F                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Put Drive in Automode (0 no action, 1 automode) |
| 00113        | 112          | 0070                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Put Drive in Handmode (0 no action, 1 handmode) |
| 00114        | 113          | 0071                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | Spare — No Action                                     |
| 00115        | 114          | 0072                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Disable SCADA Communications                    |
| 00116        | 115          | 0073                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Relay 1 Control/Status (1 closed, 0 open)       |
| 00117        | 116          | 0074                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Relay 2 Control/Status (1 closed, 0 open)       |
| 00118        | 117          | 0075                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Relay 3 Control/Status (1 closed, 0 open)       |
| 00119        | 118          | 0076                        | bit value    | 1           | 5            | 15                         | 0          | 1          | (mom) Relay 4 Control/Status (1 closed, 0 open)       |
| 10122        | 121          | 0079                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 1 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10123        | 122          | 007A                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 2 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10124        | 123          | 007B                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 3 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10125        | 124          | 007C                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 4 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10126        | 125          | 007D                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 5 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10127        | 126          | 007E                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 6 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10128        | 127          | 007F                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 7 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10129        | 128          | 0080                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 8 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |
| 10130        | 129          | 0081                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 9 (0 open, 1 closed)                  |

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| 10131        | 130          | 0082                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 10 (0 open, 1 closed)                           |
| 10132        | 131          | 0083                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 11 (0 open, 1 closed)                           |
| 10133        | 132          | 0084                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 12 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10134        | 133          | 0085                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 13 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10135        | 134          | 0086                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 14 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10136        | 135          | 0087                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 15 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10137        | 136          | 0088                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 16 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10138        | 137          | 0089                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 17 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10139        | 138          | 008A                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 18 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| 10140        | 139          | 008B                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Auxiliary Input 19 (0 open, 1 closed) (spare)                   |
| *10141       | 140          | 008C                        | bit value    | 2           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 1          | Amps Displayed and Used Menu # 108 0 = VSD Amps; 1 = Motor Amps |
| 30202        | 201          | 00C9                        | Amps         | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 3000       | Drive Current 3-Phase Average RMS                               |
| 30203        | 202          | 00CA                        | Hz/10        | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 2000       | Drive Frequency   |
| 30204        | 203          | 00CB                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 30205        | 204          | 00CC                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 30206        | 205          | 00CD                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | 4-20ma or 0-10 volts ANA-IN-5 (scaled) (spare)                  |
| 30207        | 206          | 00CE                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | 4-20ma or 0-10 volts ANA-IN-4 (scaled) (spare)                  |

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>  |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| 30208        | 207          | 00CF                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | 4–20ma or 0–10 volts ANA-IN-3 (scaled) (spare)            |
| 30209        | 208          | 00D0                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | 4–20ma or 0–10 volts ANA-IN-2 (scaled) (spare)            |
| 30210        | 209          | 00D1                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | 4–20ma or 0–10 volts ANA-IN-1 (scaled) (pres./temp/other) |
| 30211        | 210          | 00D2                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 30212        | 211          | 00D3                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Reason Stopped [*m*]                                      |
| 30213        | 212          | 00D4                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Reason Cannot Start [*m*]                                 |
| 30214        | 213          | 00D5                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Drive Mode [*m*]'   |
| 30216        | 215          | 00D7                        | Amps *10     | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Drive Capacity in Amps                                    |
| 30217        | 216          | 00D8                        | hours        | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Drive Run Hours   |
| 30218        | 217          | 00D9                        | minutes      | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 59         | Drive Run Minutes   |
| 30219        | 218          | 00DA                        | hours        | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Power on Hours  |
| 30220        | 219          | 00DB                        | minutes      | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 59         | Power on Minutes  |
| 30221        | 220          | 00DC                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 0          | 65535      | Starts on Drive   |
| *30222       | 221          | 00DD                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | VSD Output Voltage  |
| *30223       | 222          | 00DE                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | VSD Output Power  |
| *30224       | 223          | 00DF                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | HMI Temperature   |
| 30225        | 224          | 00E0                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 30226        | 225          | 00E1                        |              | 4           | n/a          | n/a                        | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40252        | 251          | 00FB                        | Hz           | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 400        | Drive Base Speed  |
| 40253        | 252          | 00FC                        | Hz/10        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 900        | Target Frequency Set Point                                |
| 40254        | 253          | 00FD                        | Hz           | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 90         | Maximum Frequency Set Point                               |
| 40255        | 254          | 00FE                        | Hz           | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 89         | Minimum Frequency Set Point                               |
| 40256        | 255          | 00FF                        | Amps         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 999        | Target Current Set Point                                  |

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>                                |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| 40257        | 256          | 0100                        | Amps         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 999        | Maximum Current Set Point                         |
| 40258        | 257          | 0101                        | Amps         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 999        | Minimum Current Set Point                         |
| 40259        | 258          | 0102                        | psia         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 5000       | Target Pressure Set Point                         |
| 40260        | 259          | 0103                        | psia         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 5000       | Maximum Pressure Set Point                        |
| 40261        | 260          | 0104                        | psia         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 5000       | Minimum Pressure Set Point                        |
| 40262        | 261          | 0105                        | sec          | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40263        | 262          | 0106                        | 1 10Hz amp   | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40264        | 263          | 0107                        | sec          | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40265        | 264          | 0108                        | sec          | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40266        | 265          | 0109                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 1          | Ramp Direction (0 raise, 1 lower)                 |
| 40267        | 266          | 010A                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 1          | 3          | Pump Control (1 pressure, 2 current, 3 frequency) |
| 40268        | 267          | 010B                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40269        | 268          | 010C                        | Hz psia 10   | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40270        | 269          | 010D                        | sec          | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 9999       | Soft Start Time Delay                             |
| 40271        | 270          | 010E                        | Hz/10        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 10         | Soft Start Frequency Increment                    |
| *40272       | 271          | 010F                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Broadcast acceptance                              |
| *40273       | 272          | 0110                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Under Current Ignore Delay                        |
| *40274       | 273          | 0111                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Under Current Activation Delay                    |
| *40275       | 274          | 0112                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Under Current Restart Delay                       |
| *40276       | 275          | 0113                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | OverCurrent Activation Delay                      |
| 40277        | 276          | 0114                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40278        | 277          | 0115                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |
| 40279        | 278          | 0116                        |              | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 99         |            | Spare   |

| <b>Alias</b> | <b>Addr.</b> | <b>Addr.<br/>In<br/>Hex</b> | <b>Units</b> | <b>Read</b> | <b>Write</b> | <b>Broadcast<br/>Write</b> | <b>Min</b> | <b>Max</b> | <b>Description</b>                               |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|--|
| 40280        | 279          | 0117                        | c0,c1        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40281        | 280          | 0118                        | c2,c3        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40282        | 281          | 0119                        | c4,c5        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40283        | 282          | 011A                        | c6,c7        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40284        | 283          | 011B                        | c8,c9        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40285        | 284          | 011C                        | c10,c11      | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40286        | 285          | 011D                        | c12,c13      | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40287        | 286          | 011E                        | c14,c15      | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40288        | 287          | 011F                        | c16,c17      | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40289        | 288          | 0120                        | c18,c19      | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40290        | 289          | 0121                        | 0x00<br>0x00 | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Well ID Characters (null terminated)             |
| 40538        | 538          | 021A                        | sec          | n/a         | na/          | 16                         | 0          | 65535      | Low-Order portion of above (addr. 537)(see text) |
| 42001        | 2000         | 07D0                        | year         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 1980       | 2235       | Read/Set current Year of internal calendar       |
| 42002        | 2001         | 07D1                        | month        | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 1          | 12         | Read/Set current Month of Year                   |
| 42003        | 2002         | 07D2                        | day          | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 1          | 31         | Read/Set current Day of Month                    |
| 42004        | 2003         | 07D3                        | hour         | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 23         | Read/Set current Time of Day (24hour check)      |
| 42005        | 2004         | 07D4                        | minute       | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 59         | Read/Set current Time of Day (minutes)           |
| 42006        | 2005         | 07D5                        | second       | 3           | 6            | 16                         | 0          | 59         | Read/Set current Time of Day (seconds)           |

**Tip**

- Physical media for communication to the VSD (from the SCADA transmitter/receiver equipment) is two-wire cable, as specified by the RS485 standard. Electrical line coding standards are specified by the RS485 standard. Also refer to the Physical Connection section in this chapter for addition information about properly terminating and connecting SCADA communication cable.
- Data rates for the SCADA function of the VSD are user selectable (Menu 342) and can be 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 and 19,200 bits per second (baud).
- Transport protocol is Modbus RTU, as defined by the Modicon *Modbus Protocol Reference Guide* PI-MBUS-300 Rev. C (Jan 1991).

9.1.7

## SCADA Messages

[Table 9-2 SCADA Messages](#) shows explanations of the SCADA messages available from addresses 211, 212 and 213. These messages are returned to the Modbus Master when a drive fault/shutdown occurs.

**Table 9-2: SCADA Messages**

| Message Number | Description       |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 4802           | Manual start      |
| 4803           | Automatic start   |
| 4804           | Overcurrent       |
| 4805           | Undercurrent      |
| 4806           | Manual stop       |
| 4807           | Pressure too high |
| 4808           | Pressure too low  |
| 4809           | VSD HMI too hot   |
| 4810           | VSD HMI too cold  |
| 4811           | INP1 active       |
| 4812           | INP2 active       |
| 4813           | INP3 active       |
| 4814           | INP4 active       |
| 4815           | INP5 active       |
| 4816           | INP6 active       |
| 4817           | INP7 active       |
| 4818           | INP8 active       |
| 4819           | INP9 active       |

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| Message Number | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| 4820           | INP10 active   |
| 4821           | INP11 active   |
| 4822           | INP12 active   |
| 4823           | INP13 active   |
| 4824           | INP14 active   |
| 4825           | INP15 active   |
| 4826           | INP16 active   |
| 4827           | INP17 active   |
| 4828           | Power failed   |
| 4829           | ANA 1 out of range                                   |
| 4830           | Not Used   |
| 4831           | ANA 2 out of range                                   |
| 4832           | Not Used   |
| 4833           | ANA 3 out of range                                   |
| 4834           | Not Used   |
| 4835           | ANA 4 out of range                                   |
| 4836           | Not Used   |
| 4837           | ANA 5 out of range                                   |
| 4838           | Not Used   |
| 4839           | ANA 6 out of range                                   |
| 4840           | Not Used   |
| 4841           | ANA 7 out of range                                   |
| 4842           | Not Used   |
| 4843           | ANA8 out of range                                    |
| 4844           | Not Used   |
| 4845           | VSD tripped  |
| 4846           | Unknown reason                                       |
| 4847           | VSD Communication Error — No Packets                 |
| 4848           | VSD Communication Short Packet Came                  |
| 4849           | VSD Communication Bank Packet Error                  |
| 4850           | VSD Communication Address Packet Error               |
| 4851           | VSD Communication Mask Packet Error                  |
| 4852           | VSD Communication Data Packet Error                  |
| 4853           | Drive tripped; waiting to read error code from drive |
| 4854           | Drive tripped; reason in VSD_TRIP_CODE               |
| 4855           | VSD Trip   |

| Message Number | Description                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 4856           | Overcurrent during acceleration       |
| 4857           | Overcurrent during deceleration       |
| 4858           | Overcurrent during constant speed run |
| 4859           | Load End Overcurrent                  |
| 4860           | U Phase Armature Short Circuit        |
| 4861           | V Phase Armature Short Circuit        |
| 4862           | W Phase Armature Short Circuit        |
| 4863           | Lost Input Phase                      |
| 4864           | Lost Output Phase                     |
| 4865           | Ovvoltage during Accel.               |
| 4866           | Ovvoltage during Decel.               |
| 4867           | Ovvoltage during Constant speed.      |
| 4868           | Inverter Overload                     |
| 4869           | Motor Overload                        |
| 4870           | Dynamic Braking resistor overload     |
| 4871           | Inverter Overheat                     |
| 4872           | Emergency Off                         |
| 4873           | EEProm Failure during write           |
| 4874           | EEProm Failure during read            |
| 4875           | Unused                                |
| 4876           | RAM Error                             |
| 4877           | ROM Error                             |
| 4878           | CPU Error                             |
| 4879           | RS232 Timeout                         |
| 4880           | Gate Array Error                      |
| 4881           | Output Current Detection Circuit Fail |
| 4882           | Option PCB Error                      |
| 4883           | Option ROM Error                      |
| 4884           | Low Current                           |
| 4885           | Main current undervoltage             |
| 4886           | Unused                                |
| 4887           | Over Torque                           |
| 4888           | Earth Fault (Software)                |
| 4889           | Earth Fault (Software)                |
| 4890           | Open Fuse                             |
| 4891           | Dynamic Braking Resistor overcurrent  |

| Message Number | Description                              |
|----------------|--|
| 4892           | Overspeed in DC Sect. while Accel.       |
| 4893           | Overspeed in DC Sect. while Decel.       |
| 4894           | Overspeed in DC Sect. while Const. speed |
| 4895           | Autotuning Error                         |
| 4896           | Inverter Typeform Error                  |
| 4897           | Power Failed                             |
| 4898           | Power was restored                       |
| 4899           | Exited program                           |
| 4900           | VSD Inverter off Due to Interlock        |
| 4901           | VSD control voltage low.                 |
| 4902           | VSD bus voltage low.                     |
| 4903           | Drive cannot start because ....          |
| 4904           | Drive will start on ....                 |
| 4905           | Running (string) XX.X Hz XX.X Amps       |
| 4906           | XX seconds                               |
| 4907           | Message                                  |
| 4908           | SHIFT                                    |
| 4909           | END OF HELP                              |
| 4910           | HELP BUFFER FULL                         |
| 4911           | XXX <EMPTY MENU>                         |
| 4912           | Ready to start                           |
| 4913           | Initializing VSD                         |
| 4914           | Too many auto-starts                     |

## 9.2 SCADA Equipment Installation

SCADA equipment or site communication equipment is optional for Schlumberger VSD and SWD systems. The standard site communication solution for Schlumberger VSDs and SWDs is the Site Communication Box (SCB). Equipment other than the SCB may be specified, but is beyond the scope of this manual. Anyone installing site communication equipment other than the SCB will have to refer to manufacturer's recommendations and documentation.

Training is required before installing, commissioning, and operating Schlumberger site communication equipment. Training level and skill set are defined by the following note (a reprint from the Site Communication Box B Installation and Commissioning Manual for espWatcher Services).

### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.



### Note

Only qualified personnel should perform SCB installations. Installation requires knowledge of the PAC, satellite modem, satellite network, end devices, and industrial electrical and communication wiring. The installer is responsible for installing the equipment according to local electrical and hazardous location regulations. The Schlumberger-France Training Center and Edmonton Product Center offer a training course on the installation of SCB.

---

For detailed installation instructions for the SCB, refer to [InTouch Content ID 3833966](#) (WCP - AL Site Communications Box (SCB) Installation and Operation Manuals). Installation topics include SCB mounting location, antenna installation, antenna aiming, satellite modem installation, PAC setup, power and communication cabling, and appendices which contain field wiring instructions for external devices to the SCB.

9.3

## SCADA Equipment Operation

After the SCB is completely installed and the site is powered up, the PAC must be configured to connect to the end device(s). Configuring the PAC may be performed locally, by qualified personnel, or remotely by the Schlumberger InterACT Production Support Team. For detailed instructions for configuring and operating the SCB, refer to [InTouch Content ID 3833966](#) (WCP - AL Site Communications Box (SCB) Installation and Operation Manuals). Operation topics include establishing communications with the PAC/MPDS/MSAT, connecting supporting end devices, and end device addresses and I/Os.

9.4

## SCADA Equipment Commissioning

Commissioning of an SCB actually begins before the unit is installed on site. Formal commissioning procedures are completed in the field in communication with the Schlumberger InterACT Production Support Team.

For detailed instructions on commissioning the site (VSD and SCB), refer to [InTouch Content ID 3833966](#) (WCP - AL Site Communications Box (SCB) Installation and Operation Manuals). Commissioning topics include how to fill out and submit an Application Data Sheet to InterACT, precommissioning procedures, and setting a formal post-installation appointment for site commissioning.

The following contact information is a reprint from the SCB manual, and is included in the event that the SCB installation and commissioning manual is not available.

#### Private

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious  
Potential Loss: Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical

Please contact the InterACT Production support team to make an appointment with your installer to complete the commissioning process at least 24 hours before the site installation visit is planned. This allows the support team to plan and allocate resources to ensure the site commissioning process is smooth and efficient.

Commissioning appointments can be made by calling the support team during business hours from 08:00 – 17:00 (the time zone is North American Mountain Standard Time which is -7:00 GMT) at 1-303-791-2400 ext. 4, or by sending an email to [ipro@slb.com](mailto:ipro@slb.com).

Commissioning appointments can be accommodated based on your time zone, however, you must make the appointment during the office hours shown above. Due to the amount of time involved in the creating and commissioning a site, InterACT will give priority to customers who have made commissioning appointments. In the event that no appointment is made, the InterACT Production support team will do its best to accommodate the commissioning needs.

However, should no member of the support team be available due to previous appointments, we will not be able to perform the commissioning of the site.

## 9.5

## SCADA Equipment Maintenance

Site communication equipment does require periodic on-site maintenance.

For detailed steps to be performed for maintenance of the SCB, refer to [InTouch Content ID 3833966](#) (WCP - AL Site Communications Box (SCB) Installation and Operation Manuals). Topics include power-down safety procedures, how to inform the InterACT production team that a power outage is for maintenance (and not faulty equipment), on-site visual inspection checklist, and preparations for site emergencies (high winds, water penetration, etc).

## 9.6

## SCADA Equipment Troubleshooting

When a site is not responding to remote communication or does not start up smoothly, troubleshooting procedures are required to identify the problem and solve it.

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

For detailed troubleshooting procedures for the SCB, refer to [InTouch Content ID 3833966](#) (WCP - AL Site Communications Box (SCB) Installation and Operation Manuals). Topics include basic connection to a PAC with a PC, satellite modem troubleshooting, a comprehensive troubleshooting checklist, and how to capture background information to contact customer support at [ipro@slb.com](mailto:ipro@slb.com).

## Maintenance

|               |  |       |              |
|---------------|--|-------|--------------|
| <b>10.1</b>   | <b>Periodic Inspection</b>                     | <hr/> | <b>10- 1</b> |
| <b>10.2</b>   | <b>Requesting Maintenance Support</b>          | <hr/> | <b>10- 3</b> |
| <b>10.3</b>   | <b>Component Service Life</b>                  | <hr/> | <b>10- 3</b> |
| <b>10.4</b>   | <b>Explanation of VSD Resets</b>               | <hr/> | <b>10- 4</b> |
| <b>10.5</b>   | <b>Superuser Resets</b>                        | <hr/> | <b>10- 5</b> |
| <b>10.5.1</b> | Performing a Reset Using the Diagnostic Keypad | <hr/> | <b>10- 6</b> |
| <b>10.5.2</b> | Performing a Type 255 Reset                    | <hr/> | <b>10- 6</b> |
| <b>10.5.3</b> | Performing a Type Form (Type 7) Reset          | <hr/> | <b>10- 7</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 10 MAINTENANCE

This chapter discusses preventive maintenance that is required for Speedstar 2000 VSDs. Recommended service intervals for maintenance procedures (especially life-limited parts and components) are included.



|        |                     |  |
|--------|---------------------|--|
| Danger | Potential Severity: | Major                                      |
|        | Potential Loss:     | Assets, Personnel, Reputation              |
|        | Hazard Category:    | electrical, machinery equipment hand tools |

Troubleshooting or servicing a Schlumberger VSD must be performed by qualified personnel. Qualified personnel is defined as those who have attended and successfully completed the relevant Schlumberger training at a recognized Training Center. The Toshiba variable speed drive course is also highly recommended for personnel that (will) start up and service drives on a regular basis. Completion of these courses is NOT a substitute for field experience. Course-trained personnel should be accompanied and mentored by experienced personnel until deemed competent to work unsupervised. Qualified personnel should have their course reference material on hand. Only then should they contact AL InTouch for additional support and troubleshooting/repair instructions.

## 10.1

### Periodic Inspection

Maintenance for variable speed drives includes periodic inspections for drives that seemingly are functioning properly, but have been in service for a reasonable amount of time. Often, visual inspection can identify a problem or malfunction before it gets serious enough to require the drive to be shutdown for maintenance or repair, or the drive registers a fault and shuts down by itself. The following table lists the major visual inspection objectives that should be checked on a periodic basis:



|        |                     |                               |
|--------|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Danger | Potential Severity: | Major                         |
|        | Potential Loss:     | Assets, Personnel, Reputation |
|        | Hazard Category:    | electrical                    |

Use lockout/tagout procedures in accordance with local electrical codes before performing any drive maintenance.  
Do not use liquid cleaning agents.

**Table 10-1: Periodic Visual Inspection Checklist**

| <b>Inspection Item</b>  | <b>Recommended Inspection Interval</b>   | <b>Recommended Action</b>   | <b>Condition Observed (write in)</b> |
|---|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| Check the operating drive for cleanliness.  | Every time drive is checked  | Enclosure should be free of dust, moisture, or grease. Check also for bird and insect penetration to the enclosure (exterior applications).   |                                      |
| Keep the exposed heatsinks free of dust and debris.   | Every time drive is checked  | With power to the drive OFF, blow dust and debris from heatsinks and away from enclosure.   |                                      |
| Check electrical connections for tightness (with power off, locked out, and with charge LED out). | As needed  | Tighten with proper wrenches.   |                                      |
| Check heat exchanger filters.   | Dependent upon prevailing conditions in the area (some areas have excess dust, sand, or leaves). | Clean or replace as needed.   |                                      |
| Check for proper air flow through enclosure.  | Every time drive is checked.   | Physically feel for air flow outside the top heat exchanger on the exterior of the enclosure. Open doors and check lower heat exchanger air flow from inside the enclosure. Listen for noisy bearings and feel for excessive vibration. |                                      |
| Check rear blower assemblies  | Every time drive is checked.   | Physically feel for air flow from the bottom of the assembly. If not adequate flow, remove housing and clean between fins of heat sink.   |                                      |
| Check muffin fans for proper operation.   | Every time drive is checked.   | Check for air flow with a piece of paper. Depending on size of drive, there may be up to three or more fans. Don't forget fans on top of capacitors.  |                                      |

| Inspection Item   | Recommended Inspection Interval            | Recommended Action  | Condition Observed (write in) |
|---|--|---|-------------------------------|
| Check all around drive enclosure for unused holes or knockouts. | Every time drive is checked.               | Plug holes with appropriate covers. At minimum, or as temporary remedy, cover with duct tape.   |                               |
| Visually inspect the capacitors.                                | Every time drive is opened for inspection. | Look for discoloration or swelling of the capacitor. Be sure to look over the explosion barrier in the drive enclosure with a flashlight, or remove the barrier for closer inspection. Replace in pairs (at minimum). |                               |

10.2

## Requesting Maintenance Support

Refer to for an example of an Application Data/Problem Information Sheet. This sheet is also included in Appendix C of this manual so that extra copies may be produced for additional usage.

The Application Data/Problem Information Sheet is created to correspond to information flow on InTouchSupport.com so that the field user can complete a hardcopy version on site and enter the information on the InTouchsupport.com database upon returning to the Schlumberger service center or shop.

10.3

## Component Service Life

Some VSD components have a known optimum service life and must be replaced when their service life expires. The service lives of life-limited VSD components are shown in [Table 10-2 Service Life Replacement Chart](#).

**Table 10-2: Service Life Replacement Chart**

| Part Name                             | Service Life | Remarks   |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---|
| large-capacity electrolytic capacitor | 5 years      | Apply power semiannually during long periods of inactivity. |
| internal cooling fan                  | 26,000 hours |   |
| external cooling fan                  | 26,000 hours |   |

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| Part Name      | Service Life       | Remarks                         |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| contact relays | 500,000 operations |                                 |
| connectors     | 100 operations     | Replace pin in case of failure. |

10.4

## Explanation of VSD Resets



Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

Troubleshooting or servicing a Schlumberger VSD must be performed by qualified personnel. Qualified personnel is defined as those who have attended and successfully completed the Toshiba technical course for industrial drives and have their course reference material on hand. Only then should qualified personnel contact AL InTouch for additional support and troubleshooting/repair instructions.



### Note

The following reset definitions are valid for HMI software version 2.06 only.

| Term                  | Definition   |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>TYPE 3 RESET</b>   | This resets all of the normal parameters in the VSD to the factory default settings. After this type of reset, the power to the VSD should be cycled once to complete the process.   |
| <b>TYPE 7 RESET</b>   | This resets the typeform of the VSD. The CPU will monitor the gate drive board on smaller VSDs and the coordination board on 518-1200 KVA units, and will reset the output amperage of the VSD to match the board. After this type of reset, the power to the VSD should be cycled once to complete the process. |
| <b>TYPE 255 RESET</b> | This will reset all of the parameters in the VSD to factory settings and will include any settings that have been changed using the Superuser mode.  |



### Note

After this type of reset, a Type 7 reset must also be performed and power must be cycled to complete the process.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**Note**

The TYPE 255 RESET can only be performed using the diagnostic (Toshiba) keypad.

10.5

## Superuser Resets

**Note**

Superuser Reset may only be performed using the Toshiba keypad. This function is not possible using the HMI keypad. This type of reset is usually performed only when troubleshooting a VSD and should only be performed in the following events.

The superuser reset should be used in the event one or more of the following is true for the application:

- The inverter control board is changed
- The gate drive board is changed
- The option ROM is changed
- The VSD is not operating as expected in reference to the proper output amperage
- The coordination board is changed or the DIP switches are changed on the coordination board (518-1200 KVA drives only).

The superuser reset is used to return the VSD to the factory settings. This reset will reset all of the programmed parameters in the VSD that are associated with the inverter controls. These include but are not limited to:

- maximum output amperage
- volts-per-hertz settings (base speed)
- minimum frequency
- maximum frequency
- start frequency
- acceleration rate (ramp frequency)
- deceleration rate.



Warning

Potential Severity: Serious  
 Potential Loss: Assets  
 Hazard Category: machinery equipment hand tools

The superuser reset should only be performed by qualified personnel; serious equipment damage may result if not done properly.

Refer to [Table 10-3 Superuser Reset-Required Parts](#) for a list of the parts or tools that are required to perform the superuser reset.

**Table 10-3: Superuser Reset-Required Parts**

| Part Number | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| 1303148     | Five (5)-meter cable for connecting the diagnostic Toshiba G3 keypad to the SWD or VSD |
| 1303130     | Diagnostic G3 keypad for the SWD or VSD  |
| 1303080     | Metal case for the diagnostic G3 keypad for the SWD or VSD                             |

#### 10.5.1

## Performing a Reset Using the Diagnostic Keypad

There is a special function within *GROUP: SUPERUSER* that will perform a factory reset similar to the standard reset; however, this factory reset will also return all *superuser* parameters to their default values.

To access the superuser mode, perform the following steps after cycling power to the drive.

1. Press and release the *LOCAL/REMOTE* key.
2. Press and hold the *READ/WRITE* key.
3. While holding the *READ/WRITE* key, press the *LOCAL/REMOTE* key.

On the display, you should now see *GROUP: SUPERUSER* followed by *RAMF*. If you do not see this, cycle the power to the drive and repeat Step 1, 2, and 3 above.

#### 10.5.2

## Performing a Type 255 Reset

The Type 255 reset is the superuser reset that will return all parameters (*normal* and *superuser*) their original factory settings.

1. With *RAMF* displayed on the screen, press up the *ARROW* key until *TYP* is displayed.

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

2. Press *READ/WRITE* again to enter *TYP* mode.
3. Use the ARROW keys to change the current value to 255.
4. Press *READ/WRITE* to write the new value, the drive should display the word *INITIALIZING*. The display is followed by an audible relay click. The drive should then default to *OUTPUT FREQUENCY=0.0 Hz*.

**Note**

Occasionally the G3 will display an *INVERTER TYPEFORM ERROR* following a superuser reset. Clear the fault normally as instructed on the screen and proceed with the next step of this procedure.

**10.5.3**

## Performing a Type Form (Type 7) Reset

After resetting the VSD in superuser mode, it is necessary to perform an inverter typeform reset (in standard programming mode) to ensure the software recognizes the inverter type.

1. Go into the *UTILITY PARAMETERS* program group and scroll to the *STANDARD SETTING MODE SELECTION* parameter.
2. Enter the numeral 7 into this parameter. This will initialize a typeform reset. After the inverter displays *INITIALIZING*, it will default back to *OUTPUT FREQUENCY=0.0 Hz*. The entire drive memory is now reset back to factory settings.

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# Troubleshooting

|             |   |              |
|-------------|---|--------------|
| <b>11.1</b> | <b>Required Troubleshooting Equipment and Tools</b>   | <b>11- 1</b> |
| <b>11.2</b> | <b>Capturing Drive Data</b>   | <b>11- 2</b> |
| <b>11.3</b> | <b>Pre-Powerup Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)</b>                           | <b>11- 2</b> |
| <b>11.4</b> | <b>Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)</b>          | <b>11- 4</b> |
| 11.4.1      | Main Power Circuit Checks   | 11- 5        |
| 11.4.1.1    | Checking Input Diodes   | 11- 5        |
| 11.4.1.2    | Checking Input Diodes (isolated from circuit)   | 11- 6        |
| 11.4.1.3    | Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                    | 11- 7        |
| 11.4.1.4    | Control Power Supply Checks   | 11- 9        |
| 11.4.1.5    | HMI Power Supply Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                             | 11-10        |
| 11.4.2      | VSD Output Tests for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)                                    | 11-12        |
| 11.4.2.1    | Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with Toshiba keypad)                                       | 11-12        |
| 11.4.2.2    | Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with HMI)  | 11-14        |
| 11.4.2.3    | Base Drive Pulse Test   | 11-14        |
| 11.4.2.4    | Output Waveform Test  | 11-16        |
| 11.4.2.5    | Reduced Output Voltage Test   | 11-17        |
| 11.4.2.6    | Sequence Checks   | 11-18        |
| 11.4.2.7    | Full Output Voltage Test (without Motor)  | 11-19        |
| 11.4.2.8    | Full Output Voltage Test (with Motor)   | 11-20        |
| 11.5        | <b>Pre-Powerup Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)</b>                  | <b>11-20</b> |
| <b>11.6</b> | <b>Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)</b> | <b>11-22</b> |
| 11.6.1      | Main Power Circuit Checks   | 11-22        |
| 11.6.1.1    | Checking Input Diodes   | 11-23        |
| 11.6.1.2    | Checking Input Diodes (isolated from circuit)   | 11-24        |
| 11.6.1.3    | Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)           | 11-24        |
| 11.6.1.4    | Control Power Supply Checks   | 11-26        |
| 11.6.1.5    | HMI Power Supply Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)                    | 11-28        |
| 11.6.2      | VSD Output Tests for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)                           | 11-30        |
| 11.6.2.1    | Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with Toshiba keypad)                                       | 11-30        |
| 11.6.2.2    | Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with HMI)  | 11-32        |
| 11.6.2.3    | Base Drive Pulse Test   | 11-32        |
| 11.6.2.4    | Base Drive Pulse Troubleshooting Procedures   | 11-35        |
| 11.6.2.5    | Output Waveform Test  | 11-35        |
| 11.6.2.6    | Reduced Output Voltage Test   | 11-37        |
| 11.6.2.7    | Reduced Voltage Output Signal Timing Test   | 11-38        |
| 11.6.2.8    | Sequence Checks   | 11-39        |

|             |  |              |
|-------------|--|--------------|
| 11.6.2.9    | Full Output Voltage Test (without Motor) | 11-40        |
| 11.6.2.10   | Full Output Voltage Test (with Motor)    | 11-41        |
| <b>11.7</b> | <b>Common Fault Displays</b>             | <b>11-41</b> |
| <b>11.8</b> | <b>Known Troubleshooting Topics</b>      | <b>11-45</b> |

## 11

# TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter provides troubleshooting procedures for Speedstar 2000 VSDs that are in service and must be tested or are malfunctioning. These procedures are intended to help the field user identify which part of the VSD is malfunctioning. Any attempted repairs to a VSD should be performed in conjunction with AL InTouch support and should be performed by qualified personnel as defined in the note that follows.



**Danger**

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives, machinery equipment hand tools

Troubleshooting or servicing a Schlumberger VSD must be performed by qualified personnel. Qualified personnel is defined as those who have attended and successfully completed the relevant Schlumberger training at a recognized Training Center. The Toshiba variable speed drive course is also highly recommended for personnel that (will) start up and service drives on a regular basis. Completion of these courses is NOT a substitute for field experience. Course-trained personnel should be accompanied and mentored by experienced personnel until deemed competent to work unsupervised. Qualified personnel should have their course reference material on hand. Only then should they contact AL InTouch for additional support and troubleshooting/repair instructions.

## 11.1

## Required Troubleshooting Equipment and Tools

Before attempting any troubleshooting procedures, ensure that the personnel assigned to the job have the required troubleshooting equipment and tools listed in the VSD Tools Kit (Schlumberger part number 100072064) located in [GeMS \(Schlumberger Global Engineering Management System\)](#).

The list may also be found and items ordered from [OneCat \(Schlumberger WCP Products Catalog\)](#).

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

11.2

## Capturing Drive Data

The first step in starting up or troubleshooting a VSD system is to capture all equipment and personnel contact data for the drive system. Refer to the following table that may be used as a checklist to ensure complete drive data has been captured. Refer to this data when contacting AL InTouch for further assistance.

**Table 11-1: Drive Data.** Record drive data in this table.

| Data Item                        | Description (write in) | Comments/Check Mark |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| Drive Rating (kVA)               |                        |                     |
| Drive Location                   |                        |                     |
| Date                             |                        |                     |
| Service Engineer Name            |                        |                     |
| Customer                         |                        |                     |
| Output Filter Type               |                        |                     |
| Motor Type                       |                        |                     |
| Pump Type                        |                        |                     |
| Number of Stages                 |                        |                     |
| Cable Type and Length            |                        |                     |
| Output Transformer Type and Mfr. |                        |                     |
| Transformer Impedance            |                        |                     |
| Schlumberger Office              |                        |                     |
| Customer Contact Name            |                        |                     |
| Customer Phone Number            |                        |                     |



### Note

If the drive you are troubleshooting fails or does not perform as expected, complete the Drive Data capture as shown above or the VSD Application Data/Problem Information Sheet in Appendix C and contact Artificial Lift InTouch for assistance.

11.3

## Pre-Powerup Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

Perform the following checks before applying any power to the drive.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel, Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

Use appropriate lockout/tagout procedures (refer to InTouch ID# 3827719) to ensure that VSD power is OFF before proceeding with the following checks and procedures.

Use a VOM to verify that ALL power is OFF on the VSD, including

- Incoming lines (if unit is a 12-pulse, check two sets of incoming lines) at the bottom of the circuit breaker
- Motor terminals
- The DC bus

- 
1. Verify board numbers, switch settings, and jumper settings are correct for the application and that CPT(s) have connections made to the proper taps for the application.
  2. Verify that the MST (initial charge timer) is set to 0.3 to 1.0 seconds (if applicable).
  3. Verify all connectors are properly plugged in.
  4. Inspect the DC bus capacitors. Make sure they are not leaking oil, show bulges, or that the vent plug is opened.
  5. Inspect MS1 (initial charge contactor) contacts (if possible).
  6. Check the tightness on all cable and bus connections.
  7. Perform a thorough visual check of all drive components. Ensure that the installer did not bend resistors or break any components on the circuit boards.
  8. Ensure that the drive is clean and free of debris, dust, cobwebs, etc.
  9. Check all fuses before power-up. A blown fuse indicates that power has been applied to the drive prior to your arrival. Check fuses and main wiring connections for loose components and connections. Tighten if necessary.
  10. Confirm proper grounding of all appropriate items.
  11. Ensure that RTV has been applied to the HMI keypad flexible cable to prevent shorts.
  12. Ensure that a Category-5 (CAT5) communication cable has been installed from the HMI to the VSD.
  13. Ensure that the HMI contains a lithium battery.
  14. If analog signals are used in the application, ensure that there are no grounds present to interrupt the signals. No resistance to ground should be detected.

- 15.** Confirm that step-up transformer taps are consistent with motor data and cable data. Record data if necessary.

**Table 11-2: Step-Up Transformer/Motor/Cable Data Confirmation**

| Item             | Data (write in) | Comments |
|------------------|-----------------|----------|
| Tap Setting      |                 |          |
| Output Voltage   |                 |          |
| Cable Size (AWG) |                 |          |

- 16.** Confirm that no grounds exist on the step-up transformer primary and secondary. Also ensure that no cable resistance to ground exists. Record data in the table provided.

**Table 11-3: Step-Up Transformer and Cable Resistances**

| Item                           | Data (write in) | Comments |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|----------|
| Resistance at primary (ohms)   |                 |          |
| Resistance at secondary (ohms) |                 |          |
| Cable Resistance (ohms)        |                 |          |

- 17.** Check the resistance of the motor with the cable for balance. To do this, the cable must be disconnected from the transformer.



**Tip**

Do not reconnect the step-up transformer to the cable at this time. The drive will be run without the motor in upcoming startup procedures.

11.4

## Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

Perform the following checks to ensure proper function of the main power circuit components.



Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel, Reputation  
**Danger** Hazard Category: electrical

Turn all power OFF before making changes to transformer taps or connecting wires to components.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 11.4.1

## Main Power Circuit Checks

1. Use a VOM to ensure that the DC bus capacitors have been completely discharged.



Danger

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| Potential Severity: | Major             |
| Potential Loss:     | Assets, Personnel |
| Hazard Category:    | electrical        |

DO NOT trust the LED inside the VSD cabinet to indicate discharge state of the DC bus capacitors.

2. Remove the input power fuses and test them.
3. Carefully disassemble the drive, only to the level to expose the main power circuit components.
4. Give all drive components a thorough visual inspection and ensure that no parts are broken or damaged.
5. Use a VOM to test the following main circuit components:
  - control power fuses
  - DC bus fuse(s)
  - soft-start resistor-Refer to the appropriate drawing for Softstart resistor value.
  - DC bus capacitors-Check the charge and discharge rate of the capacitors and ensure that the charge rate is faster than discharge. Use the diode mode of the VOM to charge the capacitors and DC volts to discharge.
  - discharge resistor R2-Manually push in MS2 to take reading (if applicable).
  - thermistor (should read 18 to 24 kohms@room temperature)

## 11.4.1.1

### Checking Input Diodes

This section describes how to test the input diodes while they are still included in the drive's circuits.

**Note**

The charging indication displayed on the VOM is caused by the charging action of the DC bus filter capacitors through the forward-biased diode.

Refer to the following table for VOM connection points and readings while the diode is still in the circuit.

**Table 11-4: Input diode test reading (diode in circuit)**

| Meter (+) | Meter (-) | Reading          |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|
| DC Bus +  | Input R   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input S   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input T   | Charging         |
| Input R   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input S   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input T   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input R   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input S   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input T   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input R   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input S   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input T   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |

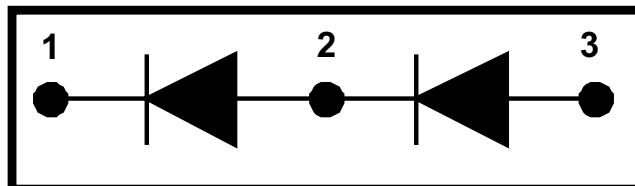
#### 11.4.1.2

### Checking Input Diodes (isolated from circuit)

This section describes how to test the input diodes (rectifiers) if some problem was discovered while testing them in the circuit. Refer to the following figure for test point location and to the table for values that should be read on the VOM. Use the diode tester function of the VOM.

**Note**

Testing the diodes isolated from the circuit helps avoid any interference from other connected components such as the DC link capacitors. Any charging display on the VOM is the result of the DC link capacitors trying to charge from the voltage applied to them from the meter.



**Figure 11-1: Diode test points**

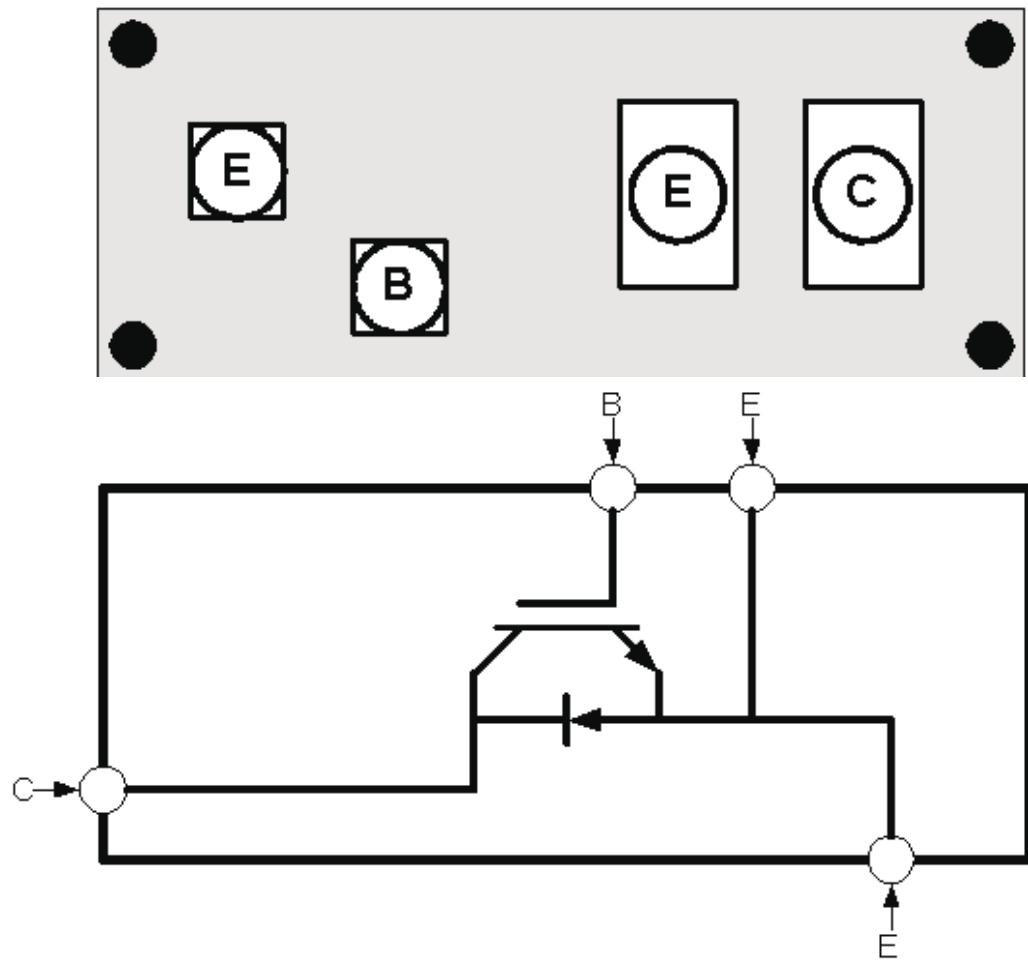
| Meter (+) Lead | Meter (-) Lead | Meter Reading<br>(diode removed<br>from circuit) | Meter Reading<br>(diode in circuit) |
|----------------|----------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2              | 1              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                 |
| 2              | 3              | OL   | charging                            |
| 3              | 2              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                 |
| 1              | 2              | OL   | charging                            |

#### 11.4.1.3

### Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

This section gives step-by-step procedures on how to test a single-transistor type IGBT.

1. Attach the VOM leads as shown in the corresponding schematic and table.



**Figure 11-2: Single-Transistor IGBT Block Diagram and Schematic  
(module MG500Q1US11 shown)**

**Table 11-5: Single-transistor test connection points and values**

| <b>Meter Lead Connection Points</b> |     | <b>Meter Display</b> |
|-------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| NEG                                 | POS | Reading              |
| C                                   | E   | 0.2 to 0.6           |
| E                                   | C   | OL (charging)        |
| B                                   | C   | OL (charging)        |
| C                                   | B   | OL (charging)        |
| B                                   | E   | OL (charging)        |
| E                                   | B   | OL (charging)        |

2. Ensure that the VOM readings match or approximate those shown in the Single-Transistor Test Connection Points and Values table.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## 11.4.1.4

## Control Power Supply Checks

Perform the following checks to ensure that the drive's control circuits and power supplies are operating properly.

### Control Power Supply Check Procedure

1. Remove the input fuses (if they are not already removed).
2. Make sure the control-power leads are attached to the bus bars on the *load* side of the input circuit breaker, ahead of the input fuses.
3. Jumper the fuse indicator circuit to complete the circuit (if applicable).
4. Remove the MST timer (if applicable).
5. Disconnect the fan circuit (CN11) to reduce noise while testing.
6. Temporarily defeat the door interlock switches (if applicable).



|                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| Potential Severity: | Major      |
| Potential Loss:     | Personnel  |
| Hazard Category:    | electrical |

High voltage (480 volts) will be turned ON for the next phase of testing. Keep hands, tools, and personnel in the area away from high voltage risk areas.

7. When all connections are safely completed from Steps 1 through 6 above, close the Main Circuit Breaker (MCB1).
8. Make sure any power LEDs on the base drive board are illuminated.
9. Make sure the charge LED (indicating DC bus voltage) is NOT illuminated.
10. Use the VOM to make sure the control power transformer(s) (CPT1 and possibly an additional CPT) are functioning properly.
11. The display on the Toshiba keypad should be flashing DC bus undervoltage.

**Warning**

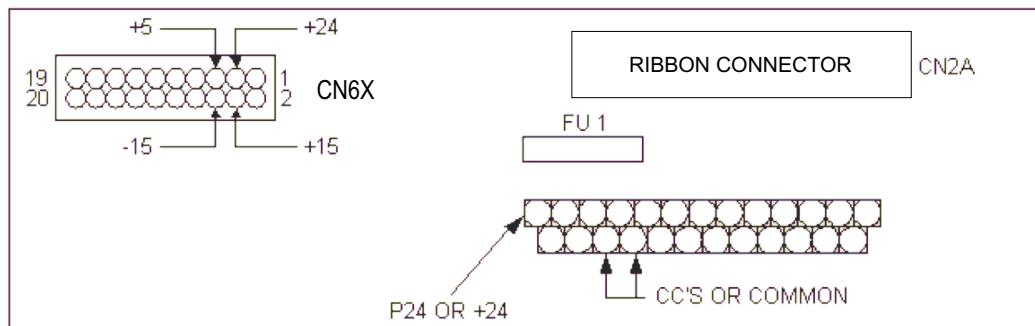
Potential Severity: Serious

Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

DO NOT touch pins on the VSD Terminal Board together. Use a test adapter plug (refer to the Troubleshooting Required Equipment and Tools list) to ensure pins and test leads do not contact each other.  
 Use a VOM to check the power supplies (+5 V, +15 V, -15 V, +24 V).

- 12.** Refer to the following block diagram of the VSD Terminal Board and table of Control Power Supplies Test Points and Readings. Check and ensure that all power supplies are working properly.



**Figure 11-3: VSD Terminal Board (control power test points)**

**Table 11-6: Control power supplies test points and readings**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +15                             | 14.4 to 15.6                            | CN6X-4           | Terminal CC       |
| -15                             | -14.4 to -15.6                          | CN6X-6           | Terminal CC       |
| +5                              | 4.8 to 5.2                              | CN6X-5           | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | TERM P24         | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | CN6X-3           | Terminal CC       |

#### 11.4.1.5 HMI Power Supply Checks for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)

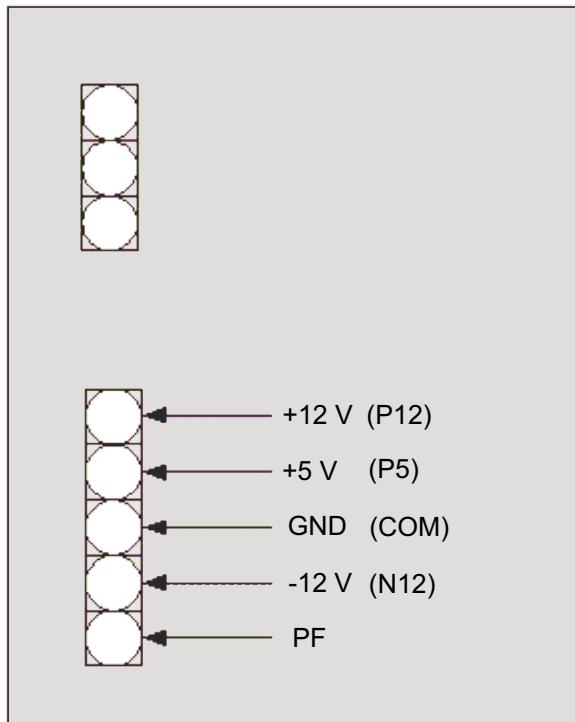
Perform the following checks while referring to the HMI Power Supply Block Diagram and HMI Power Supply Voltages table. Ensure that the power supplies are providing the proper voltages to ground (COM) within the permissible range as shown in [Figure 11-4 HMI Power Supply Block Diagram](#) and the accompanying table.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

**i Note**

The HMI Power Supply/Power Fail Board are usually located either in the left panel of the drive enclosure or the top (ceiling) of the enclosure.



**Figure 11-4: HMI Power Supply Block Diagram**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +12                             | approx. +12                             | P12              | COM               |
| +5                              | approx. +5                              | P5               | COM               |
| -12                             | approx. —12                             | N12              | COM               |

11.4.2

## VSD Output Tests for Single Inverter Units (66 to 454 kVA)



### Note

To perform the output tests described in this section, the VSD must be placed in SuperUser mode. The drive you are troubleshooting already has an HMI display, but you may choose to invoke SuperUser mode using the Toshiba keypad included in the Troubleshooting Required Equipment and Tools list. Be sure to refer to the correct procedure for the user interface (keypad and display) you are using.

11.4.2.1

### Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with Toshiba keypad)

The procedures in this subsection check the VSD output pulses to make sure the drive is operating per specification. The VSD must be placed in SuperUser mode to defeat the DC Undervoltage warning and subsequent drive shutdown to perform this test.



Danger

Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical

Do not use any feature of SuperUser programming to do anything with the VSD other than temporarily placing the drive in TEST MODE as described in this procedure without specific authorization from Toshiba Corporation. Unauthorized modification of SuperUser parameters can lead to equipment damage.

Place the VSD in SuperUser mode by performing the following steps:

1. Program the VSD with the steps listed in the SuperUser mode programming steps figure that follows.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

|  | DISPLAY                   | DESCRIPTION   |
|--|---------------------------|---|
|  | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE     | When Power is applied   |
|  | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE     | Panel Control LED will change state when key is pressed unless locked out |
|  | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE     | Press this key the display will not change                                |
|  | GROUP : SUPE RU SER       | Press and hold the read/write key then press local/remote                 |
|  | RAMF                      | 1st parameter of Super User is displayed                                  |
|  | TEST                      | Test mode setting address shown   |
|  | 0                         | Displays value in test mode   |
|  | 1                         | Change value to a 1 to activate test mode                                 |
|  | TEST                      | Test and 1 flash to show test mode is activated                           |
|  | OUTPUT FREQUENCY<br>0.0HZ | Returns to normal display   |
| To reactivate DC U V turn off power and then re-energize |                           |   |

Figure 11-5: SuperUser mode programming steps

- Once the drive is in SuperUser mode, proceed to Base Drive Pulse Test and Output Waveform Test.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

#### 11.4.2.2

### Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with HMI)

The HMI has SuperUser routines included in the software (version 2.06).



#### Note

If the HMI you are using does not have version 2.06 software loaded, use the Toshiba keypad to invoke SuperUser mode. Do not attempt to place the drive in SuperUser mode with older software revisions of the HMI.

To place the VSD in SuperUser mode using the HMI, perform the following steps:



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel  
Hazard Category: electrical

Make sure the main input fuses (that provide power to the auxiliary transformer [PT]) are removed.

1. Press the MENU/ESC key on the HMI keypad.
2. Press 999 on the numerals keypad. A non-flashing NONE displays at the bottom of the LCD.
3. Press the ENTER key. NONE display at bottom of the LCD should begin to flash.
4. Press the UP or DOWN arrows to toggle through the menu selections until TURN ON SUPERUSER appears.
5. Press ENTER. At the top of the LCD, SUPERUSER should be scrolling across horizontally. The VSD is now in SuperUser mode.
6. To exit SuperUser mode, you must cycle the power to the VSD.

#### 11.4.2.3

### Base Drive Pulse Test



#### Hint

The terms base and gate are used interchangeably to describe the Base Drive Board or Gate Drive Board in this manual.

After the VSD is in SuperUser mode, perform the following steps to check and verify proper waveform of the pulses at the output of the Base Drive Board.

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

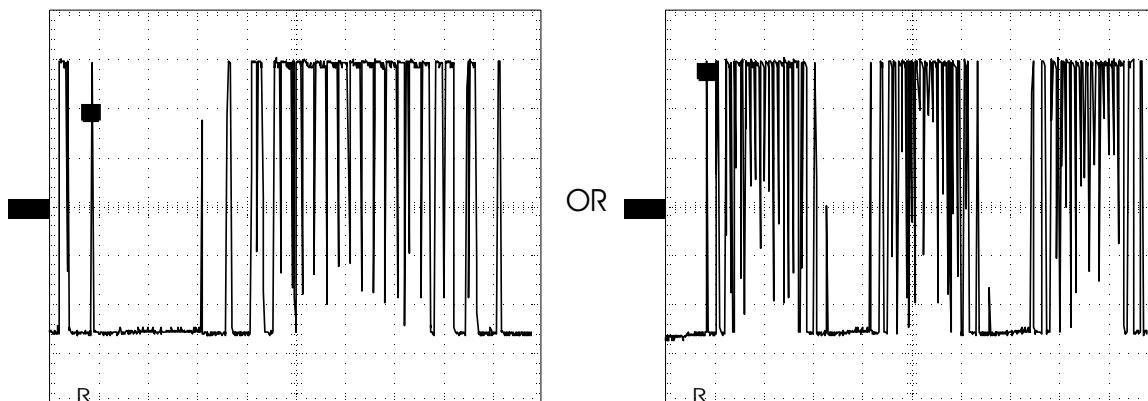
**1. Run the VSD at 60 Hz.**



Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical

Some test points on the Base Drive Board are very close to the input breaker terminals which have power on them. Keep hands and tools clear of possible high-voltage hazards.

- 2. Use an oscilloscope to check the waveform. Refer to the appropriate schematic for your particular drive's Base Drive Board output points. Make sure the scope is in DC input mode. The waveform should read 30 volts peak to peak (+15 to -15 volts) PWM square wave as shown in the Base Drive Board waveform figure.**



**Figure 11-6: Base (Gate) Drive Board waveform.** *left figure vertical scale = 5 volts per division, horizontal scale = 2 ms per division; right figure vertical scale = 5 volts per division, horizontal scale 5 ms per division*

Refer to [Figure 11-7 Base \(Gate\) Drive Board connections](#) for a diagram showing phase points and lead connections for the oscilloscope.

Notice that BOTH signals from the master and the slave(s) are synchronized with each other. It is VERY important that they match exactly.

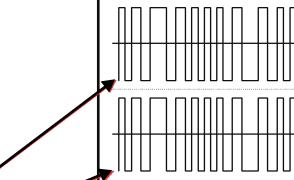
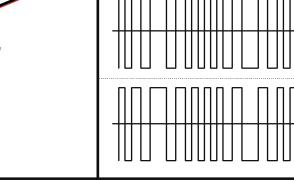
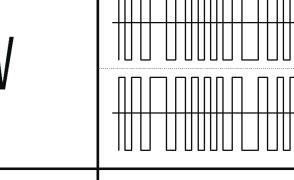
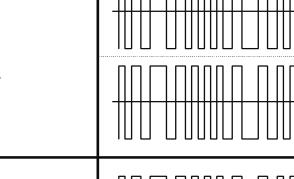
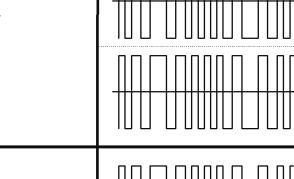
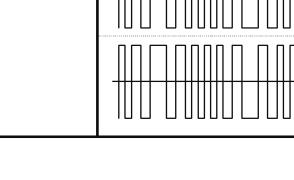
| PHASE POINT<br>ON VSD FOR<br>REFERENCE | WAVEFORMS<br>FROM DUAL<br>TRACE<br>OSCILLOSCOPE                                      | PROBE<br>CHANNELS<br>1 & 2<br>POSITIVE<br>(+) LEADS  | PROBE<br>CHANNELS<br>1 & 2<br>COMMON<br>(-) LEADS                   |
|--|--|--|---|
| U                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN11 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN11 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN11 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| V                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN21 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN21 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN21 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| W                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN31 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN31 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN31 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| X                                      |   | ← +15 VDC<br>CN41 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN41 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN41 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| Y                                      |  | ← +15 VDC<br>CN51 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN51 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN51 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| Z                                      |  | ← +15 VDC<br>CN61 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN61 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN61 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |

Figure 11-7: Base (Gate) Drive Board connections

#### 11.4.2.4

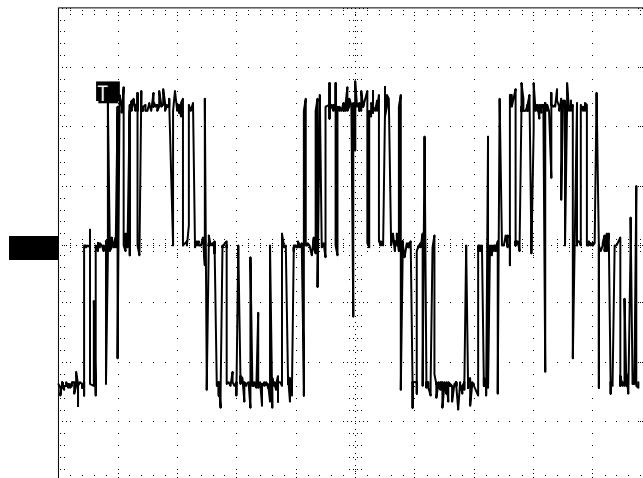
### Output Waveform Test

Perform the following test to observe the waveforms on the output points indicated.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

1. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
2. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, and U-W. The waveform should be 8 volts peak to peak (+4 volts peak to -4 volts peak) as shown in [Figure 11-8 Drive output waveform](#).



**Figure 11-8: Drive output waveform.** vertical scale = 2 volts per division,  
horizontal scale = 5 ms per division

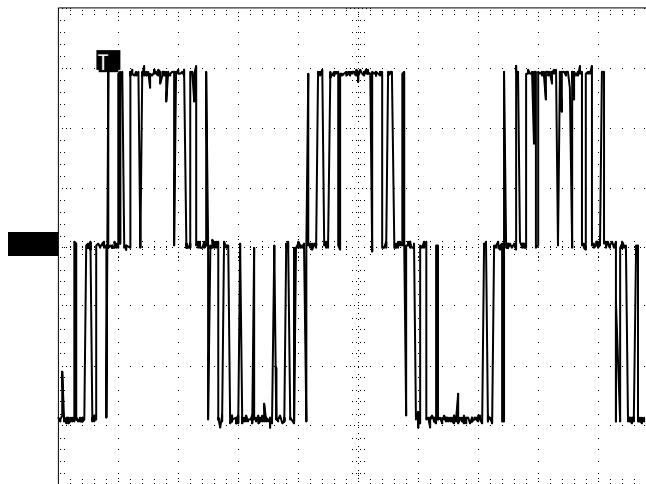
3. Turn power OFF.

#### 11.4.2.5

### Reduced Output Voltage Test

This procedure tests the VSD at reduced voltage on the DC bus. Perform the following steps to test the drive:

1. Main power should still be OFF.
2. Connect a 120 volt-AC-capable jumper (cheater cord) to two of the bus bars on the input of the rectifier.
3. Connect the cheater cord to a Variac. The Variac should be set to zero (0) volts output.
4. Turn Main Power ON.
5. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
6. Slowly increase the Variac until the DC bus reads approximately 30 volts DC.
7. Use an oscilloscope to observe waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, U-W.
8. Waveform should be 60 V peak to peak (+30V peak to -30 volts peak) as shown in [Figure 11-9 Reduced output voltage waveform](#).



**Figure 11-9: Reduced output voltage waveform.** *vertical scale = 10 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division*

9. Decrease Variac setting back to zero volts output.
10. Turn power OFF.

#### 11.4.2.6 Sequence Checks

The following checks test for proper operation of drive shunt trip, timed contactor sequences, door interlock, fuse indicator, fan circuits, and other timed and monitored sequences. All sequences may not be applicable to every drive application.

Perform the following checks:

1. Remove the Variac and cheater cord from the drive.
2. Reinstall the input fuses.
3. Reinstall the MST timer.
4. Set the MST timer to minimum and apply power. The Input circuit breaker should shunt trip. Reset the circuit breaker and set the MST to 0.3 to 1.0 seconds.
5. Turn the main power ON and ensure that MS2 picks up. Approximately one (1) second later, MS1 closes.
6. Test the blown fuse indicator circuit by pulling the tab on one of the indicators. The input circuit breaker should shunt trip.
7. Reset the input circuit breaker and main power ON.
8. Test the door switch interlock circuit by opening the drive enclosure door. The input circuit breaker should trip.

9. Reset the input circuit breaker. Reconnect CN11, apply power, and test the fan circuit by running the drive.
10. Test all remaining sequences (differs by application/jobsite).
11. With power ON, program the correct parameters for the application into the VSD.

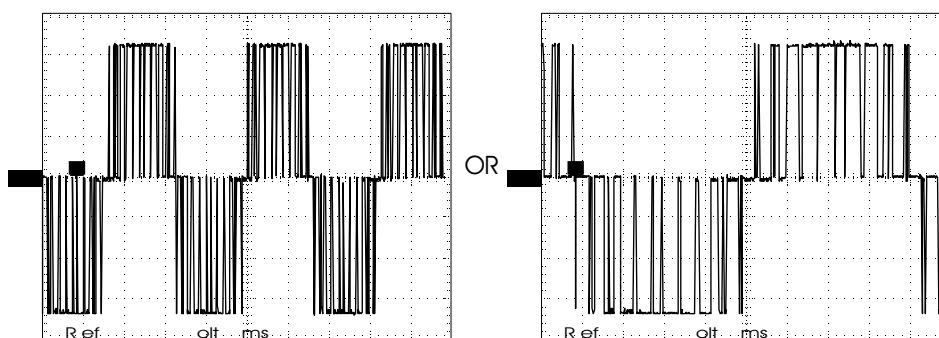
#### 11.4.2.7

### Full Output Voltage Test (without Motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation without a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Run the drive at 10 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
2. Run the drive up to 60 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
3. Verify the output waveform (at U-V, V-W, and U-W) with an oscilloscope. The waveform should look similar to one of the full voltage test waveforms (no motor load) in the following figure.

should look similar to one of the ones below.



**Figure 11-10: Full voltage test waveform (no motor load).** *left figure vertical scale = 200 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division; right figure vertical scale = 200 volts per division, horizontal scale = 2 ms per division*

4. Turn power OFF.

11.4.2.8

### Full Output Voltage Test (with Motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation with a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Ensure all power is OFF. Reconnect the motor leads to the drive output lugs.
2. Apply power and run the drive at 10 Hz. Monitor load current on the front (HMI) display.
3. Run the drive up to 60 Hz.
4. Use clamp-on ammeters to check for balanced current between U, V, and W outputs to the motor windings. Monitor the drive performance for a reasonable period of time to ensure proper operation.

11.5

## Pre-Powerup Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

Perform the following checks before applying any power to the drive.



Danger

Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel, Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical, explosives

Use appropriate lockout/tagout procedures (refer to InTouch ID# 3827719) to ensure that VSD power is OFF before proceeding with the following checks and procedures.

Use a VOM to verify that ALL power is OFF on the VSD, including

- Incoming lines (if unit is a 12-pulse, check two sets of incoming lines) at the bottom of the circuit breaker
- Motor terminals
- The DC bus

- 
1. Verify board numbers, switch settings, and jumper settings are correct for the application and that CPT(s) have connections made to the proper taps for the application.
  2. Verify that the MST (initial charge timer) is set to 0.3 to 1.0 seconds (if applicable).
  3. Verify all connectors are properly plugged in.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

4. Inspect the DC bus capacitors. Make sure they are not leaking oil, show bulges, or that the vent plug is opened.
5. Inspect MS1 (initial charge contactor) contacts (if possible).
6. Check the tightness on all cable and bus connections.
7. Check all fuses before power-up. A blown fuse indicates that power has been applied to the drive prior to your arrival. Check fuses and main wiring connections for loose components and connections. Tighten if necessary.
8. Confirm proper grounding of all appropriate items.
9. Ensure that RTV has been applied to the HMI keypad flexible cable to prevent shorts.
10. Ensure that a Category-5 (CAT5) communication cable has been installed from the HMI to the VSD.
11. Ensure that the HMI contains a lithium battery.
12. If analog signals are used in the application, ensure that there are no grounds present to interrupt the signals. No resistance to ground should be detected.
13. Confirm that step-up transformer taps are consistent with motor data and cable data. Record data if necessary.

**Table 11-7: Step-Up Transformer/Motor/Cable Data Confirmation**

| Item             | Data (write in) | Comments |
|------------------|-----------------|----------|
| Tap Setting      |                 |          |
| Output Voltage   |                 |          |
| Cable Size (AWG) |                 |          |

14. Confirm that no grounds exist on the step-up transformer primary and secondary. Also ensure that no cable resistance to ground exists. Record data in the table provided.

**Table 11-8: Step-Up Transformer and Cable Resistances**

| Item                           | Data (write in) | Comments |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|----------|
| Resistance at primary (ohms)   |                 |          |
| Resistance at secondary (ohms) |                 |          |
| Cable Resistance (ohms)        |                 |          |

15. Check the resistance of the motor with the cable for balance. To do this, the cable must be disconnected from the step-up transformer.

**Tip**

Do not reconnect the step-up transformer to the cable at this time. The drive will be run without the motor in upcoming startup procedures.

11.6

## Main Power Circuit Component Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

Perform the following checks to ensure that the main power circuit components are functioning properly.

11.6.1

### Main Power Circuit Checks

**Danger**

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel

Hazard Category: electrical, explosives, machinery equipment hand tools

Make sure the main circuit breaker (MCB1) is OFF. Use proper lockout and tagout procedures while performing main power circuit checks.

1. Use a VOM to ensure that the DC bus capacitors have been completely discharged.

**Danger**

Potential Severity: Major

Potential Loss: Assets, Personnel

Hazard Category: electrical

DO NOT trust the LED inside the VSD cabinet to indicate discharge state of the DC bus capacitors.

2. Remove the input power fuses and test them.
3. Carefully disassemble the drive, only to the level to expose the main power circuit components.
4. Give all drive components a thorough visual inspection and ensure that no parts are broken or damaged.
5. Use a VOM to test the following main circuit components:
  - control power fuses
  - DC bus fuse(s)

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

- soft-start resistor-Refer to the appropriate drawing for Softstart resistor value.
- DC bus capacitors-Check the charge and discharge rate of the capacitors and ensure that the charge rate is faster than discharge. Use the diode mode of the VOM to charge the capacitors and DC volts to discharge.
- discharge resistor R2-Manually push in MS2 to take reading (if applicable).
- thermistor (should read 18 to 24 kohms@room temperature).

### 11.6.1.1 Checking Input Diodes

This section describes how to test the input diodes while they are still included in the drive's circuits.



#### Note

The charging indication displayed on the VOM is caused by the charging action of the DC bus filter capacitors through the forward-biased diode.

Refer to the following table for VOM connection points and readings while the diode is still in the circuit.

**Table 11-9: Input diode test reading (diode in circuit)**

| Meter (+) | Meter (-) | Reading          |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|
| DC Bus +  | Input R   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input S   | Charging         |
| DC Bus +  | Input T   | Charging         |
| Input R   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input S   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input T   | DC Bus +  | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input R   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input S   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| DC Bus -  | Input T   | 0 .2 to 0 .6 Vdc |
| Input R   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input S   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |
| Input T   | DC Bus -  | Charging         |

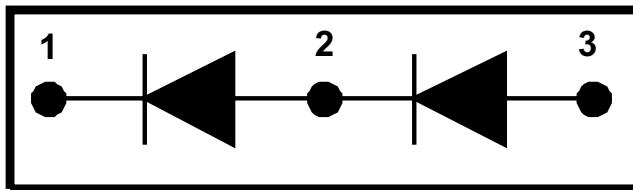
## 11.6.1.2

**Checking Input Diodes (isolated from circuit)**

This section describes how to test the input diodes (rectifiers) if some problem was discovered while testing them in the circuit. Refer to the following figure for test point location and to the table for values that should be read on the VOM. Use the diode tester function of the VOM.

**Note**

Testing the diodes isolated from the circuit helps avoid any interference from other connected components such as the DC link capacitors. Any charging display on the VOM is the result of the DC link capacitors trying to charge from the voltage applied to them from the meter.



**Figure 11-11: Diode test points**

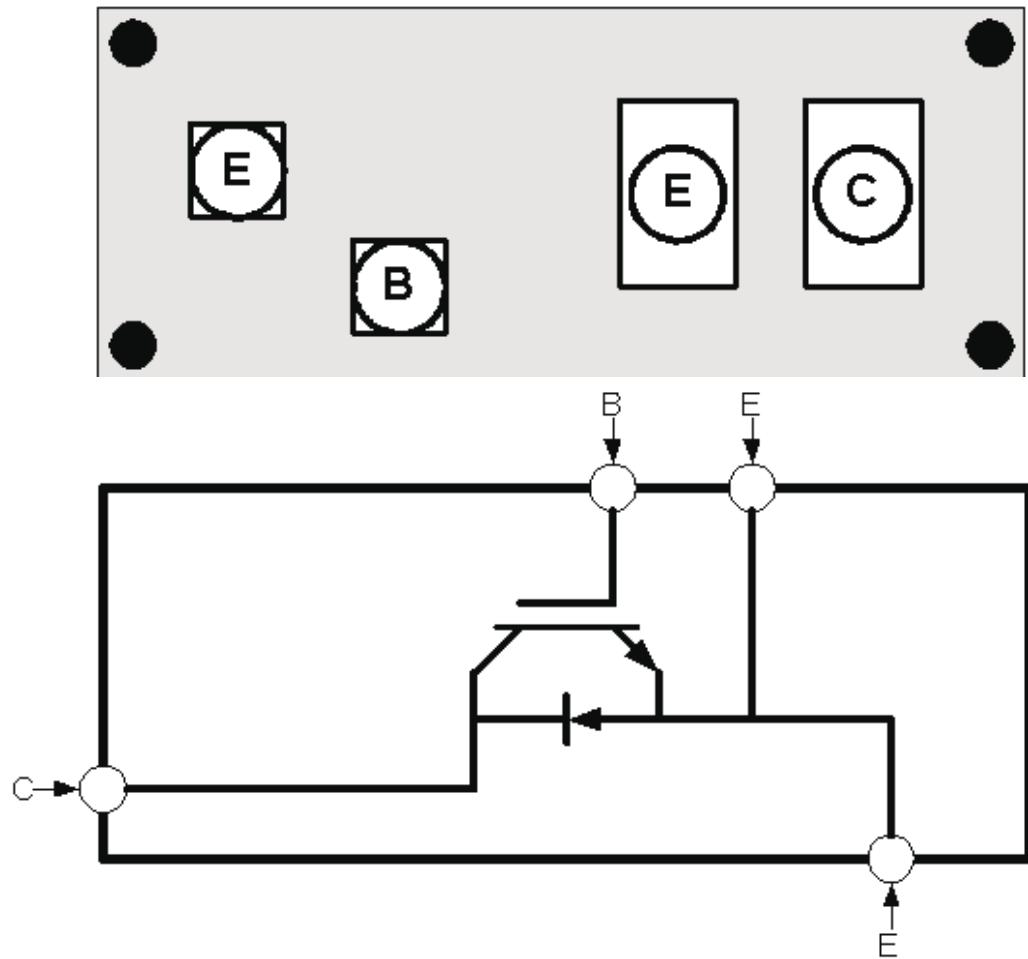
| Meter (+) Lead | Meter (-) Lead | Meter Reading<br>(diode removed<br>from circuit) | Meter Reading<br>(diode in circuit) |
|----------------|----------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2              | 1              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                 |
| 2              | 3              | OL   | charging                            |
| 3              | 2              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                              | 0.2 to 0.6 volts DC                 |
| 1              | 2              | OL   | charging                            |

## 11.6.1.3

**Checking Single—Transistor IGBTs for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)**

This section gives step-by-step procedures on how to test a single-transistor type IGBT.

1. Attach the VOM leads as shown in the corresponding schematic and table.



**Figure 11-12: Single-transistor IGBT block diagram and schematic (MG500Q1US11)**

| <b>Meter Lead Connection Points</b> |     | <b>Meter Display</b> |
|-------------------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| NEG                                 | POS | Reading              |
| C                                   | E   | 0.2 to 0.6           |
| E                                   | C   | OL (charging)        |
| B                                   | C   | OL (charging)        |
| C                                   | B   | OL (charging)        |
| B                                   | E   | OL (charging)        |
| E                                   | B   | OL (charging)        |

2. Ensure that the VOM readings match or approximate those shown in the Single-Transistor Test Connection Points and Values table.

## 11.6.1.4

## Control Power Supply Checks

Perform the following checks to ensure that the drive's control circuits and power supplies are operating properly.

### Control Power Supply Check Procedure

1. Remove the input fuses (if they are not already removed).
2. Make sure the control power leads are attached to the bus bars on the *load* side of the input circuit breaker, ahead of the input fuses.
3. Jumper the fuse indicator circuit to complete the circuit (if applicable).
4. Remove the MST timer (if applicable).
5. Disconnect the fan circuit (CN11) to reduce noise while testing.
6. Temporarily defeat the door interlock switches (if applicable).



|                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| Potential Severity: | Major      |
| Potential Loss:     | Personnel  |
| Hazard Category:    | electrical |

High voltage (480 volts) will be turned ON for the next phase of testing. Keep hands, tools, and personnel in the area away from high voltage risk areas.

7. When all connections are safely completed from Steps 1 through 6 above, close the Main Circuit Breaker (MCB1).
8. Make sure any power LEDs on the base drive board are illuminated.
9. Make sure the charge LED (indicating DC bus voltage) is NOT illuminated.
10. Use the VOM to make sure the control power transformer(s) (CPT1 and possibly an additional CPT) are functioning properly.
11. The display on the Toshiba keypad should be flashing DC bus undervoltage.

**Warning**

Potential Severity: Serious

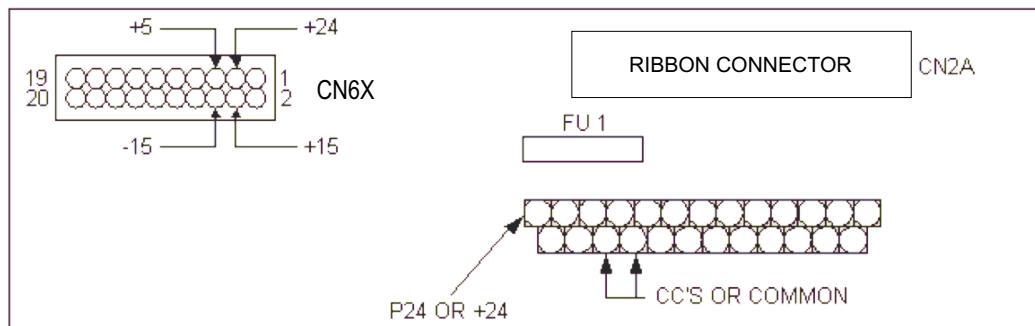
Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation

Hazard Category: electrical, machinery equipment hand tools

DO NOT touch pins on the VSD Terminal Board together. Use a test adapter plug (refer to the Troubleshooting Required Equipment and Tools list) to ensure pins and test leads do not contact each other.

Use a VOM to check the power supplies (+5 V, +15 V, -15 V, +24 V).

- 12.** Refer to the following block diagram of the VSD Terminal Board and table of Control Power Supplies Test Points and Readings. Check and ensure that all power supplies are working properly.



**Figure 11-13: VSD Terminal Board (control power test points)**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +15                             | 14.4 to 15.6                            | CN6X-4           | Terminal CC       |
| -15                             | -14.4 to -15.6                          | CN6X-6           | Terminal CC       |
| +5                              | 4.8 to 5.2                              | CN6X-5           | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | TERM P24         | Terminal CC       |
| +24                             | 21 to 27                                | CN6X-3           | Terminal CC       |

- 13.** Also check the voltages in the VSD Interface Board voltage readings table and Interface Board test points diagram that follows.

**Table 11-10: VSD Interface Board voltage readings**

| Positive (+) Meter Lead | Negative Meter Lead (-) | Reading           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| P24                     | LG                      | 21 ~ 27 Vdc       |
| P15                     | LG                      | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15                     | LG                      | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |
| P8                      | LG                      | 6 ~ 10 Vdc        |
| P5                      | LG                      | 4.8 ~ 5.2 Vdc     |

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| Positive (+) Meter Lead | Negative Meter Lead (-) | Reading           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| P15A                    | N1A                     | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15A                    | N1A                     | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |
| P15B                    | N1                      | 14.5 ~ 15.5 Vdc   |
| N15B                    | N1                      | -14.5 ~ -15.5 Vdc |

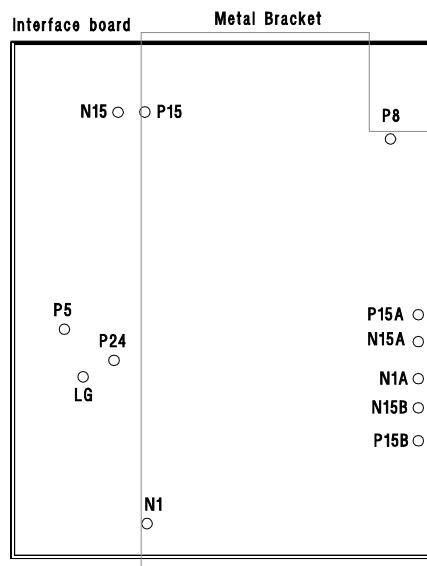


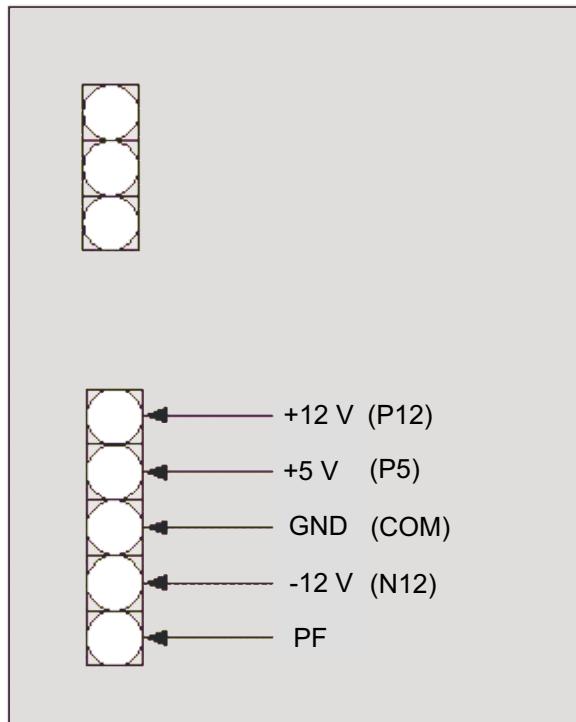
Figure 11-14: Interface Board test points

#### 11.6.1.5 HMI Power Supply Checks for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)

Perform the following checks while referring to the HMI Power Supply Block Diagram and HMI Power Supply Voltages table. Ensure that the power supplies are providing the proper voltages to ground (COM) within the permissible range as shown in [Figure 11-15 HMI Power Supply Block Diagram](#) and the accompanying table.

**i Note**

The HMI Power Supply/Power Fail Board are usually located either in the left panel of the drive enclosure or the top (ceiling) of the enclosure.



**Figure 11-15: HMI Power Supply Block Diagram**

| Power Supply<br>(nominal volts) | Permissible Voltage<br>Range (volts DC) | Test Point Probe | Test Point Common |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|-------------------|
| +12                             | approx. +12                             | P12              | COM               |
| +5                              | approx. +5                              | P5               | COM               |
| -12                             | approx. —12                             | N12              | COM               |

## 11.6.2 VSD Output Tests for Double/Triple Inverter Units (518 to 1200 kVA)



### Note

To perform the output tests described in this section, the VSD must be placed in SuperUser mode. The drive you are troubleshooting already has an HMI display, but you may choose to invoke SuperUser mode using the Toshiba keypad included in the Troubleshooting Required Equipment and Tools list. Be sure to refer to the correct procedure for the user interface (keypad and display) you are using.

### 11.6.2.1 Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with Toshiba keypad)

The procedures in this subsection check the VSD output pulses to make sure the drive is operating per specification. The VSD must be placed in SuperUser mode to defeat the DC Undervoltage warning and subsequent drive shutdown to perform this test.



Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Assets, Reputation  
Hazard Category: electrical

Do not use any feature of SuperUser programming to do anything with the VSD other than temporarily placing the drive in TEST MODE as described in this procedure without specific authorization from Toshiba Corporation. Unauthorized modification of SuperUser parameters can lead to equipment damage.

Place the VSD in SuperUser mode by performing the following steps:

1. Program the VSD with the steps listed in the SuperUser mode programming steps figure that follows.

#### Private

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

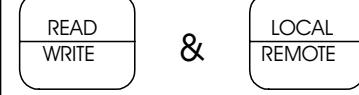
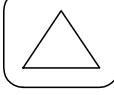
|   | DISPLAY  | DESCRIPTION   |
|---|--|---|
|   | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE  | When Power is applied   |
|    | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE  | Panel Control LED will change state when key is pressed unless locked out |
|    | DC BU S UND ERVOLTAGE  | Press this key the display will not change                                |
|    | GROUP : SUPE RU SER  | Press and hold the read/write key then press local/remote                 |
|    | RAMF   | 1st parameter of Super User is displayed                                  |
|   | TEST   | Test mode setting address shown   |
|  | 0  | Displays value in test mode   |
|  | 1  | Change value to a 1 to activate test mode                                 |
|  | TEST  | Test and 1 flash to show test mode is activated                           |
|  | OUTPUT FREQUENCY<br>0.0HZ  | Returns to normal display   |
| To reactivate DC U V turn off power and then re-energize                            |  |   |

Figure 11-16: SuperUser mode programming steps

- Once the drive is in SuperUser mode, proceed to Base Drive Pulse Test and Output Waveform Test.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

### 11.6.2.2

## Placing the VSD in SuperUser Mode (with HMI)

The HMI has SuperUser routines included in the software (version 2.06).



### Note

If the HMI you are using does not have version 2.06 software loaded, use the Toshiba keypad to invoke SuperUser mode. Do not attempt to place the drive in SuperUser mode with older software revisions of the HMI.

To place the VSD in SuperUser mode using the HMI, perform the following steps:



Danger

Potential Severity: Major  
Potential Loss: Personnel  
Hazard Category: electrical

Make sure the main input fuses (that provide power to the auxiliary transformer [PT]) are removed.

1. Press the MENU/ESC key on the HMI keypad.
2. Press 999 on the numerals keypad. A non-flashing NONE displays at the bottom of the LCD.
3. Press the ENTER key. NONE display at bottom of the LCD should begin to flash.
4. Press the UP or DOWN arrows to toggle through the menu selections until TURN ON SUPERUSER appears.
5. Press ENTER. At the top of the LCD, SUPERUSER should be scrolling across horizontally. The VSD is now in SuperUser mode.
6. To exit SuperUser mode, you must cycle the power to the VSD.

### 11.6.2.3

## Base Drive Pulse Test

After the VSD is in SuperUser mode, perform the following steps to check and verify proper waveform of the pulses at the output of the Base Drive Board.

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## **h** Hint

The terms base and gate are used interchangeably to describe the Base Drive Board or Gate Drive Board in this manual.

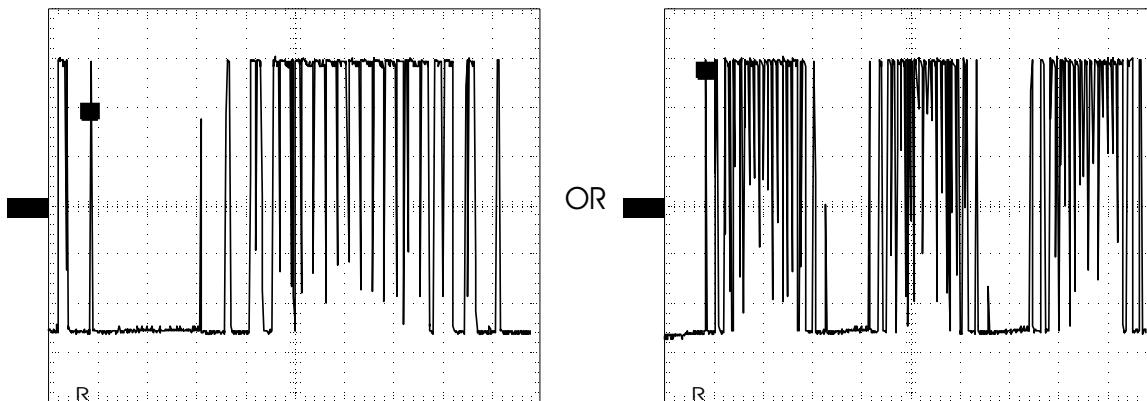
1. Run the VSD at 60 Hz.



Potential Severity: Major  
 Potential Loss: Personnel  
 Hazard Category: electrical

Some test points on the Base Drive Board are very close to the input breaker terminals which have power on them. Keep hands and tools clear of possible high-voltage hazards.

2. Use an oscilloscope to check the waveform. Refer to the appropriate schematic for your particular drive's Base Drive Board output points. Make sure the scope is in DC input mode. The waveform should read 30 volts peak to peak (+15 volts peak to -15 volts peak) PWM square wave as shown in the Base Drive Board waveform figure.



**Figure 11-17: Base (Gate) Drive Board waveform.** *left figure vertical scale = 5 volts per division, horizontal scale = 2 ms per division; right figure vertical scale = 5 volts per division, horizontal scale 5 ms per division*

Refer to [Figure 11-18 Base \(Gate\) Drive Board connections](#) for a diagram showing phase points and lead connections for the oscilloscope.

Schlumberger Artificial Lift Engineering\Schlumberger Artificial Lift Engineering\InTouch ID#01\Release Date: Provisional EDMS UID: 274896694\Produced: 13-Nov-2003 23:12:59

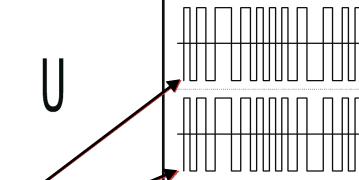
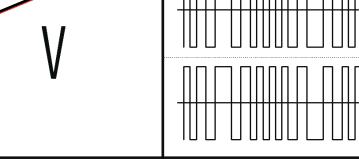
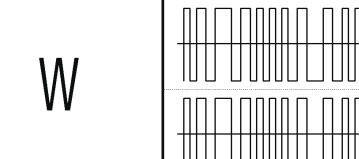
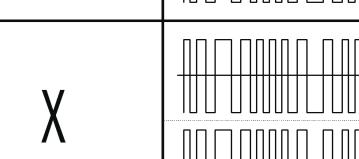
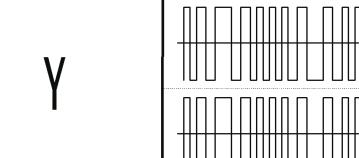
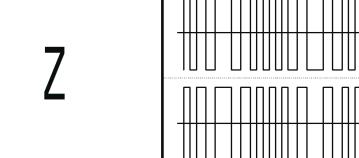
| PHASE POINT<br>ON VSD FOR<br>REFERENCE | WAVEFORMS<br>FROM DUAL<br>TRACE<br>OSCILLOSCOPE                                      | PROBE<br>CHANNELS<br>1 & 2<br>POSITIVE<br>(+ LEADS)  | PROBE<br>CHANNELS<br>1 & 2<br>COMMON<br>(-) LEADS                   |
|--|--|--|---|
| U                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN11 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>                                      | CN11 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| V                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN21 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN21 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN21 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| W                                      |    | ← +15 VDC<br>CN31 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN31 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN31 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| X                                      |   | ← +15 VDC<br>CN41 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN41 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN41 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| Y                                      |  | ← +15 VDC<br>CN51 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN51 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN51 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |
| Z                                      |  | ← +15 VDC<br>CN61 - 1<br>MASTER<br>← -15 VDC<br>← +15 VDC<br>CN61 - 1<br>SLAVE A OR B<br>← -15 VDC | CN61 - 2<br>ON BOTH<br>GATE DRIVE<br>BOARDS<br>(MASTER OR<br>SLAVE) |

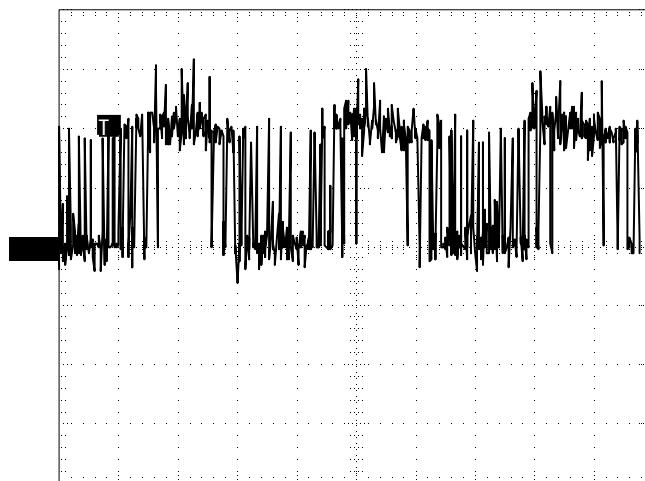
Figure 11-18: Base (Gate) Drive Board connections

3. If signal looks identical to the previous waveform example, proceed directly to the Output Waveform Test section. Otherwise, proceed to the Base Drive Pulse Troubleshooting Procedures section.

#### 11.6.2.4

### Base Drive Pulse Troubleshooting Procedures

1. Check to see if the signal is leaving the Interface board by checking signals at CN20 and CN20A (If unit has three modules, also check CN20B) Pins 1 through 6 with reference to CC (or LG). Refer to [Figure 11-18 Base \(Gate\) Drive Board connections](#). The signal should look similar to one shown in the Waveform-signals leaving Interface board figure that follows.



**Figure 11-19: Waveform-signals leaving Interface board.** *vertical scale = 2 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division*

2. If the signal is missing, the problem is either the Control Board or Interface Board. See the appropriate schematics to trace the signal further.
3. If the proper signal is present, check to see if the signal is present at entrance to Base Drive Board, CN2A. Results should be similar to the waveform shown previously (signal leaving the Interface Board).
4. If the signal is missing at CN2A, the problem is a cable. If the signal is present, but not at output of Base Drive Board, problem is the Base Drive Board.

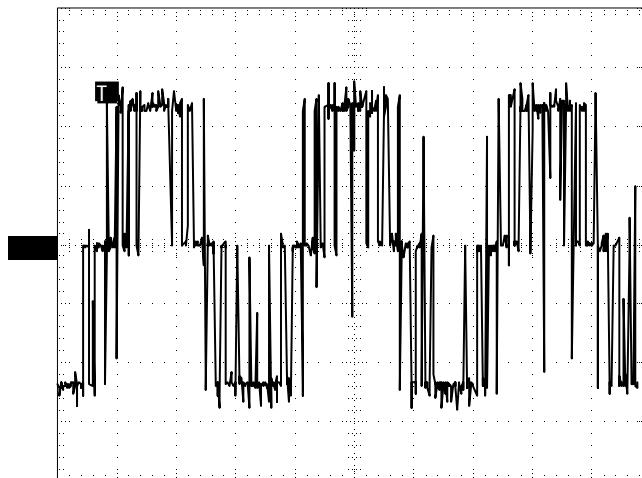
#### 11.6.2.5

### Output Waveform Test

Perform the following test to observe the waveforms on the output points indicated.

1. Unplug CN20A on the Interface board. (If your application has three power units, unplug CN20B also).
2. Turn the Main Power ON and reinitialize SuperUser Mode on the VSD.

3. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
4. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, and U-W. The waveform should be 8 volts peak to peak (+4 volts peak to -4 volts peak) as shown in the following example.



**Figure 11-20: Drive output waveform.** vertical scale = 2 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division

5. Turn power OFF.
6. Reconnect CN20A, and disconnect CN20. (If the application has three power units, CN20B remains disconnected as well).
7. Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize Superuser Test Mode on the drive.
8. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
9. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, U-W. The waveform should be 8 volts peak to peak (+4 volts to -4 volts) as shown in Step 4.
10. Turn power OFF.
11. *If the application has only two power units*, reconnect CN20 again and skip the remaining portion of this section (Steps 12 to 17). Then proceed directly to the Reduced Voltage Output Test.
12. *If the application has three power units*, disconnect CN20A again (with CN20 still disconnected) and reconnect CN20B.
13. Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize the drive in Superuser Test Mode.
14. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
15. Use an oscilloscope to observe waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, U-W.
16. Waveform should be 8 volts peak to peak (+4 volts to -4 volts) as shown previously.

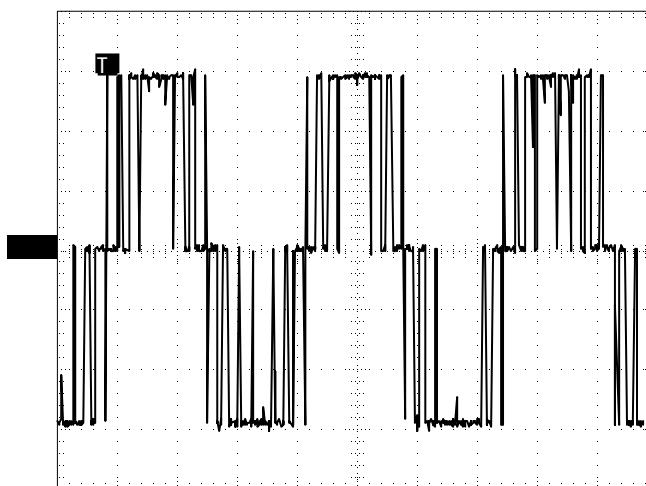
- 17.** Turn power OFF and reconnect CN20 and CN20A.

#### 11.6.2.6

### Reduced Output Voltage Test

This procedure tests the VSD at reduced voltage on the DC bus. Perform the following steps to test the drive:

- 1.** Main power should still be OFF.
- 2.** Leave CN20 connected and disconnect CN20A (and CN20B if applicable).
- 3.** Connect a 120 volt-AC-capable jumper (cheater cord) to two of the bus bars on the input of the rectifier.
- 4.** Connect the cheater cord to a Variac. The Variac should be set to zero (0) volts output.
- 5.** Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize the drive in Superuser Test Mode.
- 6.** Run the drive at 60 Hz.
- 7.** Slowly increase the Variac until the DC bus reads approximately 30 volts DC.
- 8.** Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, U-W.
- 9.** The waveform should be approximately 60 V peak to peak (+30V peak to -30 volts peak) as shown in [Figure 11-21 Reduced output voltage waveform](#).



**Figure 11-21: Reduced output voltage waveform.** *vertical scale = 10 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division*

- 10.** Decrease Variac setting back to zero volts output.
- 11.** Turn power OFF.
- 12.** Reconnect CN20A, and disconnect CN20 (leaving CN20B disconnected, if applicable).

13. Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize the drive in Superuser Test Mode.
14. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
15. Slowly increase the Variac until the DC Bus reads approximately 30 volts DC.
16. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, U-W.
17. The waveform should appear as shown in Step 9.
18. Decrease the Variac setting back to zero (0) volts out.
19. Turn power OFF.
20. If the application you are servicing has only two power units, reconnect CN20 again and skip Step 21. Then, proceed directly to the Reduced Voltage Output Signal Timing Test subsection.
21. If your application has three power units, disconnect CN20A again (with CN20 still disconnected) and reconnect CN20B.
22. Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize Superuser Test Mode on the drive.
23. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
24. Slowly increase the Variac until the DC Bus reads approximately 30 volts DC.
25. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, and U-W.
26. The waveform should resemble the approximate 30 V (peak) (refer to [Figure 11-21 Reduced output voltage waveform](#)) as shown in previous steps.
27. Decrease Variac setting back to zero (0) volts output and turn power OFF.
28. Reconnect CN20 and CN20A (CN20, CN20A, and CN20B should all be connected).

#### 11.6.2.7

### Reduced Voltage Output Signal Timing Test

The following test sequence is used to test the timing of reduced voltage output to multiple VSD (or SWD) units. To test timing, perform the following steps:

1. Turn Main Power ON and reinitialize Superuser Test Mode on the drive.
2. Run the drive at 60 Hz.
3. Slowly increase the Variac until the DC Bus reads approximately 30 volts DC.
4. Use an oscilloscope to observe the waveform on the outputs U-V, V-W, and U-W.

5. The waveform should be 60 V peak to peak (+30V peak to –30 volts peak) (refer [Figure 11-21 Reduced output voltage waveform](#)). At this point in the procedure, the outputs of both (or all three) power units are combined at the U, V, and W outputs.

---

 **Note**

Note the appearance of the PWM signal with respect to the waveform, just as you did earlier observing the output of a single power unit. The signal should be stable, with little indication that the waveform now displayed is actually the output of multiple power units overlaying one another on the screen. The Gate Interface Board is responsible for creating multiple reproductions the single gate pulse signal originating on the Control Board. The Gate Interface Board then routes these signals in phase with one another to their respective Gate Driver Boards. Significant differences in timing between these multiple signals at the U, V, and W outputs may indicate a bad Gate Interface Board (its multiple Gating Pulse outputs are out of phase) or a bad Gate Driver Board (one board has a propagation delay time which is significantly different than the other(s)).

- 
6. Decrease the Variac setting back to zero (0) volts output.  
 7. Turn power OFF and remove the cheater cord to the DC bus and the Variac from the drive.

#### 11.6.2.8 Sequence Checks

The following checks test for proper operation of drive shunt trip, timed contactor sequences, door interlock, fuse indicator, fan circuits, and other timed and monitored sequences. All sequences may not be applicable to every drive application.

Perform the following checks:

1. Verify that the power is turned OFF.
2. Reinstall the input fuses.
3. Reinstall the MST timer.
4. Set the MST timer to minimum and apply power. The input circuit breaker should shunt trip. Reset the MST to 0.3 to 1.0 seconds.
5. Reset the input circuit breaker.
6. Turn the main power ON and ensure that MS2 picks up. Approximately 1 second later, MS1 should close.

7. Test the blown fuse indicator circuit by pulling the tab on one of the indicators.  
The input circuit breaker should shunt trip.
8. Reset the input circuit breaker and turn the main power ON.
9. Test the door switch interlock circuit by opening the drive enclosure door.  
The input circuit breaker should trip.
10. Reset the input circuit breaker. Reconnect CN11, apply power, and test the fan circuit by running the drive.
11. Test all remaining sequences (differs by application/jobsite).
12. With the power ON, program the correct parameters for the application into the VSD.

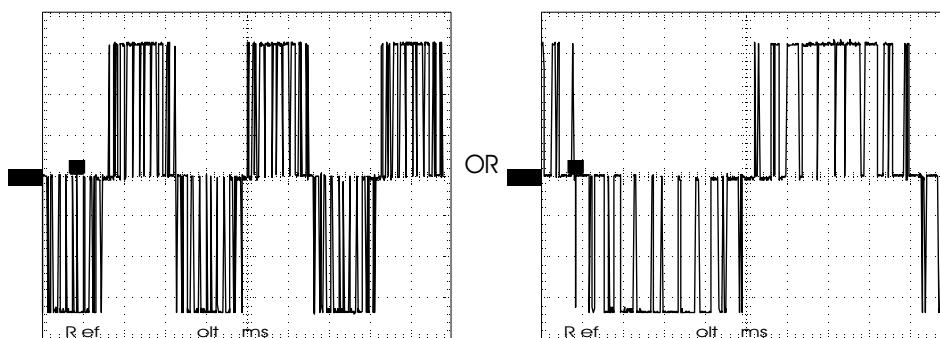
#### 11.6.2.9

### Full Output Voltage Test (without Motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation without a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Run the drive at 10 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
2. Run the drive up to 60 Hz. With a VOM (set to AC voltage mode) check to see that the voltages between the three outputs (U-V, V-W, and U-W) are balanced. Because the drive signal is PWM instead of sinusoidal, a VOM set to AC volts may not read accurately, but all three outputs should give the same reading.
3. Verify the output waveform (at U-V, V-W, and U-W) with an oscilloscope. The waveform should look similar to one of the full voltage test waveforms (no motor load) in the following figure.

should look similar to one of the ones below.



**Figure 11-22: Full voltage test waveform (no motor load).** *left figure vertical scale = 200 volts per division, horizontal scale = 5 ms per division; right figure vertical scale = 200 volts per division, horizontal scale = 2 ms per division*

4. Turn power OFF.

#### 11.6.2.10

### Full Output Voltage Test (with Motor)

This test checks the VSD for proper operation with a load (motor) attached. Perform the following steps:

1. Ensure all power is OFF. Reconnect the motor leads to the drive output lugs.
2. Apply power and run the drive at 10 Hz. Monitor load current on the front (HMI) display.
3. Run the drive up to 60 Hz.
4. Use clamp-on ammeters to check for balanced current between U, V, and W outputs to the motor windings. Monitor the drive performance for a reasonable period of time to ensure proper operation.

#### 11.7

### Common Fault Displays

This section describes common faults or errors as displayed on the HMI or Toshiba keypad LCD.

| Code or Message   | Cause   | Remedial Action  |
|---|---|--|
| OVERCURRENT (ACCEL) or DC OVERCURRENT (ACC)                             | Drive current exceeded 215% of its rated FLA (190% above 100 hp). | Check for phase-phase short. ACCELERATION TIME may be too small. VOLTAGE BOOST may be too high. Is motor/machine jammed? Is mechanical brake engaged while drive is running? If there is a contactor between motor and drive, wire so that contactor changes state only when drive is outputting 0.0 Hz.   |
| OVERCURRENT (DECCEL) or DC OVERCURRENT (DEC)                            | Drive current exceeded 215% of its rated FLA (190% above 100 hp). | Check for phase-phase short. DECELERATION TIME may be too small. Is motor/machine jammed? Is mechanical brake engaged while drive is running? Adding appropriate braking resistor across OPTIONAL "PA" and "PB" terminals may solve problem.   |
| OVERCURRENT (RUN) or DC OVERCURRENT (RUN)                               | Drive current exceeded 215% of its rated FLA (190% above 100 hp). | Check for phase-phase short. Is motor/machine jammed? Is mechanical brake engaged while drive is running? If there are severe load fluctuations, adding mechanical dampening or an output line reactor may help.   |
| U-PHASE SHORT-CIRCUIT or V PHASE SHORT-CIRCUIT or W PHASE SHORT-CIRCUIT | Drive detected short-circuit in transistor.                       | Replace transistor. Contact Schlumberger for authorized repair.  |
| LOAD-END OVERCURRENT  | Drive detected short-circuit on output.                           | Check for phase-phase short. Meg motor/leads with leads disconnected from drive. Remove any power factor correction caps on motor.   |
| OVERVOLTAGE (ACCEL) or OVERVOLTAGE (RUN)                                | Bus exceeded 787 VDC.   | Incoming AC may have gone high or spiked; a line reactor or a lower tap on transformer may help. Motor may be mechanically forced to run faster than drive is commanding; install appropriate OPTIONAL dynamic braking resistor. On eccentric cyclic loads like presses or pump jacks, contact REDA for special programming instructions that may make a DBR (Dynamic Braking Resistor) unnecessary. |

| Code or Message                             | Cause   | Remedial Action   |
|---|---|---|
| OVERVOLTAGE (DEC)                           | Bus exceeded 787 VDC.   | Incoming AC may have gone high or spike; a line reactor or a lower tap on transformer may help. DECELERATION TIME #1 may be too short. Motor may be mechanically forced to run faster than drive is commanding (due to large load inertias mechanical couplings); install appropriate OPTIONAL dynamic braking resistor. On eccentric cyclic loads like presses or pump jacks, contact REDA for special programming instructions that may make a DBR unnecessary. |
| INVERTER OVERLOAD                           | Drive exceeded 100% of its rated current for too long of a time.  | This trip indicates that the drive output exceeded its rated current for specific amounts of time. Make sure that drive is seeing voltage on all three of its input phases. Drive may be undersized.  |
| MOTOR OVERLOAD                              | Motor is in danger of overheating because it required too much current for an excessive period as determined by the drive.  | Check HMI programming manual to ensure overload is set properly.  |
| INVERTER OVERHEAT                           | Drive's heatsink exceeded 90 C.   | Check drive's fans (if any). Clear heatsinks of anything blocking airflow. Drive may not have been properly sized for operating altitude. Thermistor on heatsink may be bad.  |
| EMERGENCY OFF                               | Drive received one of the following E-STOP commands.<br>Drive was receiving STOP/START command via terminal strip when STOP button on optional TSK keypad was pressed.<br>Input terminal "S4" is being opened/closed to command E-STOP. |   |
| EEPROM WRITE FAILURE or EEPROM READ FAILURE | EEPROM was unable to read/write to peripherals.   | Check for mis-wiring that may be causing noise (such as "CC" connected to ground, an external 10 volt source connected to "PP" etc.) Control board may need to be replaced (see spare parts list). See picture of board.  |

| Code or Message                       | Cause                           | Remedial Action  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| RAM ERROR or ROM ERROR                |                                 | Check for mis-wiring that may be causing noise (such as "CC" connected to ground, an external 10 volt source connected to "PP" etc.). Replace control board (see spare parts list). See picture of board.  |
| OPTION ROM ERROR                      |                                 | Check for mis-wiring that may be causing noise (such as "CC" connected to ground, an external 10 volt source connected to "PP" etc.). If drive is energized with REDA ROM installed and is later energized without REDA ROM installed, this fault will appear. Install REDA ROM and try again. Also check for contamination in the connector and try to read ROM version with the TSK.                                     |
| CPU ERROR                             |                                 | If REDA ROM or an option board is installed or removed when drive is powered, this fault will appear. Reset like any fault. Check for mis-wiring that may be causing noise (such as "CC" connected to ground, an external 10 volt source connected to "PP" etc.). If the CPU is truly damaged, the fault will not reset and replacement of the control board is necessary. Spare parts list. See picture of control board. |
| COMMUNICATION ERROR (RS-232 Time-out) | RS232 timer exceeded time limit | Check wiring to RS232 HMI port. Cable may be broken.   |
| OPTION PCB ERROR                      |                                 | If drive is energized with an option board installed and is later energized without the board installed, this fault will appear. Check connectors between control board and option board. Use standoffs to secure board.   |

| Code or Message                       | Cause  | Remedial Action  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| LOW CURRENT TRIP                      | The drive's output current went below the current value entered in HMI for LOW CURRENT DETECT LEVEL. | Drive detected some current to ground. Depending on rating, drive senses ground fault via ZCT (hard fault) or HCT (soft fault). Comments: With leads disconnected from drive, Meg transformer or motor and leads. Look for any moisture that may provide current path to ground. Make sure that control wiring is separated from power wiring. Adding noise suppressors on coils of starters on same line as drive may snub noise picked up by ZCT. RF/EMI filter may help remove noise generated by SCR rectifiers in the vicinity. Make sure drive chassis and motor are grounded. |
| GATE ARRAY ERROR                      |  | Replace control board.   |
| OUTPUT CURRENT DETECTION CIRCUIT FAIL |  | Occurs when drive is stopped but CPU detects current flowing. This fault could be caused by plugging in HMI cable with drive powered (resulting in damage to control board). Adding a RF/EMI filter may remove noise spikes from nearby SCR rectifiers. If the control board is damaged, the drive must be serviced.   |
| INV TYPEFORM ERROR                    | Control board is not configured to drive's rating.   | HMI must be reset to factory settings  |

## 11.8

## Known Troubleshooting Topics

This section is included in the Troubleshooting chapter because it provides a link to resolved (known) and historic troubleshooting problems and topics. Refer to the [InTouch VSD reference page](#) for details of how the problem or issue was resolved.

### Private

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# HMI Menus

A.1 HMI Menus Index

---

A-37

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## A HMI MENUS

This appendix contains examples and descriptions of all available Speedstar 2000 HMI menus (version 2.06 HMI software release).

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|--|---|--|
| 100 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: __1-3  | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1       |
| A NUMERICAL VALUE ENTERED HERE WILL CHANGE THE MENUS TO THE LANGUAGE INDICATED. 1=ENGLISH 2=ESPAÑOL  |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 101 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: __YES, NO                                    | ESP: __YES<br>HPS: __YES<br>PCP: __YES |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU CAN SELECT YES OR NO TO COMMISSION THE VSD. AFTER YES IS ENTERED THERE WILL BE A WARNING THAT ALL HISTORICAL INFORMATION AND ALL USER SET PARAMETERS WILL BE RESET TO DEFAULT VALUES. YOU MUST SELECT YES AGAIN FOR CONFIRMATION.  |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 102 PRIMARY MENU   | ESP: __0 -9999<br>HPS: __0-9999<br>PCP: __0-9999  | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| THE MASTER PASSWORD WILL GIVE YOU ACCESS TO ALL OF THE PARAMETER SETTINGS. THIS PASSWORD SHOULD NOT BE AVAILABLE TO ALL OPERATORS. TO DISABLE ALL ACCESS, ENTER AN INVALID PASSWORD.   |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 103 PRIMARY MENU   | ESP: __0 -9999<br>HPS: __0 -9999<br>PCP: __0-9999 | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| THE MASTER PASSWORD MAY BE CHANGED IF THE EXISTING MASTER PASSWORD HAS ALREADY BEEN ENTERED. CHANGE THE PASSWORD TO A SPACE IF NO PASSWORD IS DESIRED FOR MASTER ACCESS.   |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 104 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: __0 characters = no password-10 characters   | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __          |
| THIS MENU CONTROLS THE USER'S ACCESS TO THE MENUS AND CAN ONLY BE ACCESSED AFTER THE PROPER MASTER PASSWORD HAS BEEN ENTERED. PRESS ENTER TO BEGIN CHANGING THE USER ACCESSES. TO CHANGE THE USER ACCESS, USE THE UP AND DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE MENUS AND PRESS THE ENTER KEY TO TOGGLE THE ACCESS LEVEL. PRESS MENU KEY WHEN DONE. |   |  |

**Figure A-1: Menus 100 to 104****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
|--|---|--|
| 105 PRIMARY MENU   | ESP: 0 -9999<br>HPS: 0-9999<br>PCP: 0-9999  | ESP: 0<br>HPS: 0<br>PCP: 0                               |
| THE USER PASSWORD ALLOWS ACCESS TO SELECTED PARAMETER SETTINGS. THE DEFAULT PARAMETERS ARE TARGET SPEED, TARGET CURRENT, TARGET PRESSURE, AND PRINTER CONTROL. USER ACCESS PARAMETERS MAY BE CHANGED USING THE MASTER PASSWORD. TO DISABLE ALL ACCESS, ENTER AN INVALID PASSWORD.  |   |  |
| 106 PRIMARY MENU   | ESP: 0 -9999<br>HPS: 0 -9999<br>PCP: 0-9999 | ESP: 0<br>HPS: 0<br>PCP: 0                               |
| ONCE THE USER OR MASTER PASSWORD HAS BEEN ENTERED, THE USER PASSWORD MAY BE CHANGED. CHANGE THE PASSWORD TO A SPACE IF NO PASSWORD IS DESIRED FOR USER ACCESS.   |   |  |
| 107 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: SPEED, CURRENT, PRESSURE               | ESP: SPEED<br>HPS: SPEED<br>PCP: SPEED                   |
| USE THE UP AND DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE CONTROL MODES. THE CHOICES ARE: SPEED, CURRENT, OR PRESSURE CONTROL. IN THE SPEED CONTROL MODE, THE VSD WILL ADJUST ITS SPEED TO MAINTAIN THE TARGET SPEED. IN THE CURRENT CONTROL MODE, THE VSD WILL ADJUST ITS SPEED TO MAINTAIN THE TARGET CURRENT. IN THE PRESSURE CONTROL MODE, THE VSD WILL ADJUST ITS SPEED TO MAINTAIN THE TARGET PRESSURE. |   |  |
| 108 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: MOTOR AMPS, ACTUAL AMPS                | ESP: ACTUAL AMPS<br>HPS: ACTUAL AMPS<br>PCP: ACTUAL AMPS |
| PRESS THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO SELECT HOW THE CURRENT (AMPS) IS DISPLAYED. THE CHOICES ARE ACTUAL AMPS OR MOTOR AMPS. THE ACTUAL AMPS IS THE ACTUAL AMPERAGE OF THE VSD ON THE OUTPUT TERMINALS. THE MOTOR AMPERAGE IS A SCALED MEASUREMENT ENTERED IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER TYPICALLY USED TO COMPENSATE FOR VARIOUS LOSSES SO THE DISPLAYED AMPERAGE REFLECTS THE AMPERAGE REACHING THE MOTOR.         |   |  |
| 109 PRIMARY MENU   | ESP: 0-10000<br>HPS: 0-4000<br>PCP: 0-10000 | ESP: 0<br>HPS: 0<br>PCP: 0                               |
| ENTER THE ACTUAL MOTOR CURRENT (AMPS). WHEN MOTOR AMPS IS SELECTED IN THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER, THE MEASURED AMPERAGE WILL BE SCALED TO THE ACTUAL MOTOR AMPERAGE. FOR BEST ACCURACY, ENTER THE VALUE WHILE THE DRIVE IS RUNNING AT 50% OR MORE OF RATED LOAD.   |   |  |

**Figure A-2: Menus 105 to 109****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| 110 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: _0                               | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0                         |
| USE THE KEYPAD TO ENTER AN ALPHANUMERIC NAME. THIS IS A USER DEFINED ENTRY FOR IDENTIFICATION OF THE EQUIPMENT.  |                                       |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
| 111 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: __                               | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __                         |
| AFTER PRESSING ENTER, YOU MAY USE THE UP AND DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE HISTORY. PRESSING ENTER WILL EXIT THE VIEW MODE.  |                                       |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
| 112 PRIMARY MENU   | ALL: YES, NO                          | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO                         |
| RECORDS ARE KEPT OF THE POWER ON TIME, THE VSD RUNNING TIME AND THE NUMBER OF VSD STARTS. THERE ARE TWO SETS OF THESE RECORDS, ONE WHICH THE USER MAY RESET, TYPICALLY WHEN A NEW PUMP OR MOTOR IS INSTALLED. TO RESET THE RECORDS SELECT 'YES'. THE RECORDS MAY BE SEEN IN THE STATUS SCREEN AND BY PRINTING OUT THE CONFIGURATION. |                                       |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
| 120 SPEED MENU   | ALL: USER INPUT, ANALOG 1, ANALOG 2   | ESP: USER INPUT<br>HPS: USER INPUT<br>PCP: USER INPUT |
| THIS IS WHERE THE VSD WILL REFERENCE ITS TARGET SPEED WHEN IN THE SPEED CONTROL MODE. PRESS THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES. WHEN AN ANALOG INPUT IS SELECTED THE SPEED IS REFERENCED TO THE SCALED VALUE OF THAT ANALOG INPUT.  |                                       |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
| 121 SPEED MENU   | ESP: 20-90<br>HPS: 10-70<br>PCP: 6-70 | ESP: 50<br>HPS: 60<br>PCP: 45                         |
| THE TARGET SPEED IS USED WHEN IN THE SPEED CONTROL MODE. THIS VALUE MUST BE WITHIN THE MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM LIMITS SET IN FOLLOWING PARAMETERS.   |                                       |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                       | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
| 122 SPEED MENU   | ESP: 20-90<br>HPS: 10-70<br>PCP: 6-70 | ESP: 20<br>HPS: 30<br>PCP: 10                         |
| THIS VALUE IS NOT A TRIP POINT. IT IS THE MINIMUM FREQUENCY AT WHICH THE VSD WILL RUN.   |                                       |   |

**Figure A-3: Menus 110 to 122****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| 123 SPEED MENU   | ESP: __20-90<br>HPS: __31-70<br>PCP: __10-70    | ESP: __60<br>HPS: __70<br>PCP: __60 |
| THIS VALUE IS NOT A TRIP POINT. IT IS THE MAXIMUM FREQUENCY AT WHICH THE VSD WILL RUN.   |   |                                     |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
| 124 SPEED MENU   | ESP: __0.1-20<br>HPS: __0.1-30<br>PCP: __0.1-20 | ESP: __4<br>HPS: __2<br>PCP: __4    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE THE SPEED CONTROL RAMP.  |   |                                     |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
| 125 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __1-10000                                  | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE THE SPEED CONTROL RAMP.   |   |                                     |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
| 126 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __0-120                                    | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE CENTER FREQUENCY. SETTING THIS PARAMETER TO ZERO WILL DISABLE THIS FEATURE.   |   |                                     |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
| 127 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __1-5                                      | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE BANDWIDTH FREQUENCY. IF THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER IS SET TO 30 AND THIS PARAMETER IS SET TO 4, THE VSD WILL AVOID THE FREQUENCY RANGE OF 28 TO 32 HZ. |   |                                     |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
| 128 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __0-120                                    | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE CENTER FREQUENCY. SETTING THIS PARAMETER TO ZERO WILL DISABLE THIS FEATURE.   |   |                                     |

**Figure A-4: Menus 123 to 128****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| 129 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __1-5                                      | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE BANDWIDTH FREQUENCY. IF THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER IS SET TO 30 AND THIS PARAMETER IS SET TO 4, THE VSD WILL AVOID THE FREQUENCY RANGE OF 28 TO 32 HZ.           |   |                                     |
| 130 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __0-120                                    | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE CENTER FREQUENCY. SETTING THIS PARAMETER TO ZERO WILL DISABLE THIS FEATURE.   |   |                                     |
| 131 SPEED MENU   | ALL: __1-5                                      | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE A FREQUENCY RANGE THAT MAY CAUSE PROBLEMS. THE VSD WILL AVOID THIS FREQUENCY RANGE IN ALL CONTROL MODES. THIS VALUE SETS THE BANDWIDTH FREQUENCY. IF THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER IS SET TO 30 AND THIS PARAMETER IS SET TO 4, THE VSD WILL AVOID THE FREQUENCY RANGE OF 28 TO 32 HZ.           |   |                                     |
| 140 CURRENT MENU   | ESP: __0-5000<br>HPS: __0-4000<br>PCP: __0-5000 | ESP: __50<br>HPS: __50<br>PCP: __50 |
| THE TARGET CURRENT IS USED WHEN IN THE CURRENT CONTROL MODE. THIS VALUE MUST BE WITHIN THE MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM LIMITS SET IN FOLLOWING PARAMETERS. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO REMEMBER THAT WHETHER THE AMPERAGE DISPLAY PARAMETER IS THE REAL AMPERAGE OR THE SCALED AMPERAGE, THE NUMBER ENTERED HERE IS BASED AND DISPLAYED ON THAT VALUE. |   |                                     |
| 141 CURRENT MENU   | ESP: __0-5000<br>HPS: __0-4000<br>PCP: __0-5000 | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0    |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MINIMUM CURRENT ALLOWED DURING OPERATION. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO REMEMBER THAT WHETHER THE AMPERAGE DISPLAY PARAMETER IS THE REAL AMPERAGE OR THE SCALED AMPERAGE, THE NUMBER ENTERED HERE IS BASED AND DISPLAYED ON THAT VALUE.              |   |                                     |

**Figure A-5: Menus 129 to 141****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
|--|---|---|
| 142 CURRENT MENU   | ESP: __0-5000<br>HPS: __0-4000<br>PCP: __0-5000     | ESP: __100<br>HPS: __100<br>PCP: __100    |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MAXIMUM CURRENT ALLOWED DURING OPERATION (SHOULD NOT EXCEED MAXIMUM OUTPUT CURRENT). IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO REMEMBER THAT WHETHER THE AMPERAGE DISPLAY PARAMETER IS THE REAL AMPERAGE OR THE SCALED AMPERAGE, THE NUMBER ENTERED HERE IS BASED AND DISPLAYED ON THAT VALUE. |   |   |
| 143 CURRENT MENU   | ESP: __0-864000<br>HPS: __0-3600<br>PCP: __0-864000 | ESP: __60<br>HPS: __60<br>PCP: __60       |
| ENTER THE ALLOWABLE TIME FOR OPERATION IN AN UNDER CURRENT CONDITION DURING STARTUP. THIS IS HOW LONG AN UNDER CURRENT CONDITION WILL BE IGNORED DURING THE STARTUP.   |   |   |
| 144 CURRENT MENU   | ESP: __1-3600<br>HPS: __1-600<br>PCP: __1-3600      | ESP: __60<br>HPS: __60<br>PCP: __60       |
| THIS DELAY ALLOWS OPERATION IN AN UNDER CURRENT CONDITION FOR THE TIME SET. THE ACTIVATION DELAY TIMER WILL CAUSE AN UNDER CURRENT CONDITION TO BE IGNORED FOR THE TIME ENTERED. WHEN THIS TIME IS EXCEEDED A SHUTDOWN WILL OCCUR.   |   |   |
| 145 CURRENT MENU   | ALL: __YES, NO                                      | ESP: __NO<br>HPS: __NO<br>PCP: __NO       |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO TOGGLE THIS ENTRY. IF AUTO RESTART IS "YES", WHEN AN UNDER CURRENT SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |   |   |
| 146 CURRENT MENU   | ALL: __1-864000                                     | ESP: __1800<br>HPS: __1800<br>PCP: __1800 |
| AFTER AN UNDER CURRENT SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THIS PARAMETER. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |   |   |

**Figure A-6: Menus 142 to 146****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| 147 CURRENT MENU  | ALL: _1-9999                                   | ESP: _6<br>HPS: _6<br>PCP: _6    |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER UNDER CURRENT SHUTDOWNS. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS ON UNDER CURRENT SHUTDOWNS. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGGLED FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS.                            |  |                                  |
| 148 CURRENT MENU  | ESP: _0.1-20<br>HPS: _0.1-30<br>PCP: _0.1-20   | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE THE CURRENT CONTROL RAMP.   |  |                                  |
| 149 CURRENT MENU  | ESP: _1-10000<br>HPS: _1-7200<br>PCP: _1-10000 | ESP: _10<br>HPS: _10<br>PCP: _10 |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE THE CURRENT CONTROL RAMP.  |  |                                  |
| 150 CURRENT MENU  | ALL: _0-5                                      | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0    |
| THIS DELAY ALLOWS OPERATION IN AN OVER CURRENT CONDITION FOR THE TIME SET. THE ACTIVATION DELAY TIMER WILL CAUSE AN OVER CURRENT CONDITION TO BE IGNORED FOR THE TIME ENTERED. WHEN THIS TIME IS EXCEEDED A SHUTDOWN WILL OCCUR.  |  |                                  |
| 151 CURRENT MENU  | ALL: YES, NO                                   | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO    |
| THIS MENU IS USED TO ENABLE OR DISABLE THE TRACKING UNDERLOAD FUNCTION, WHICH IS TYPICALLY USED TO PREVENT DAMAGE CAUSED BY CONDITIONS SUCH AS GAS LOCKS. MENU 152 SETS THE TRACKING UNDERLOAD LEVEL AS A PERCENTAGE OF THE RUNNING CURRENT. THE TRACKING UNDERLOAD SHUTDOWN SHARES THE SAME SHUTDOWN AND RESTART TIMERS AS THE NORMAL UNDERLOAD SHUTDOWNS. |  |                                  |

**Figure A-7: Menus 147 to 151****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                       |
|--|---|---|
| 152 CURRENT MENU   | ALL: _0.0-98.9                                  | ESP: _85.0<br>HPS: _85.0<br>PCP: _85.0  |
| IF TRACKING UNDERLOAD IS ENABLED (MENU 151) THIS MENU SETS THE PERCENTAGE OF THE AVERAGE RUNNING CURRENT THAT WILL START THE UNDERLOAD SHUTDOWN TIMERS TO COUNT DOWN THIS TRACKING. UNDERLOAD CURRENT IS BASED ON A RUNNING AVERAGE OF THE LAST FEW MINUTES OF CURRENT. IF THERE ARE ANY SUDDEN SPEED CHANGES THE TRACKING UNDERLOAD CURRENT IS AUTOMATICALLY RESET TO ZERO, AND WILL START TO BUILD BACK UP AGAIN TOWARDS THE SET PERCENTAGE OF NORMAL RUNNING CURRENT AS THE DRIVE RUNS. |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                       |
| 160 PRESSURE MENU  | ALL: _1-10000                                   | ESP: _2500<br>HPS: _5000<br>PCP: _2500  |
| THE TARGET PRESSURE IS USED WHEN IN THE PRESSURE CONTROL MODE. THIS VALUE MUST BE WITHIN THE MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM LIMITS SET IN FOLLOWING PARAMETERS.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                       |
| 161 PRESSURE MENU  | ALL: _0-9999                                    | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0           |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MINIMUM PRESSURE ALLOWED DURING OPERATION.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                       |
| 162 PRESSURE MENU  | ESP: _1-20000<br>HPS: _1-15000<br>PCP: _1-20000 | ESP: _5000<br>HPS: _10000<br>PCP: _5000 |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MAXIMUM PRESSURE ALLOWED DURING OPERATION.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                                 | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                       |
| 163 PRESSURE MENU  | ALL: _ANALOG 1,ANALOG 2,NONE                    | ESP: _NONE<br>HPS: _NONE<br>PCP: _NONE  |
| ENTER THE ANALOG INPUT NUMBER CONNECTED TO PRESSURE SENSING DEVICE. THIS SETTING INDICATES THE ANALOG INPUT TO BE USED IN PRESSURE CONTROL MODE.   |   |   |

**Figure A-8: Menus 152 to 163****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
|---|---|---|
| 164 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: SPEED UP, SLOW DOWN                    | ESP: SPEED UP<br>HPS: SPEED UP<br>PCP: SPEED UP |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO TOGGLE ENTRIES. THIS SETTING DEFINES THE ACTION ON A PRESSURE INCREASE. "SPEED UP" WILL CAUSE THE MOTOR SPEED TO INCREASE. "SLOW DOWN" WILL CAUSE THE MOTOR SPEED TO DECREASE. THE AMOUNT OF CHANGE IS SET IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS. THIS PARAMETER IS USED ONLY IN PRESSURE CONTROL MODE.                    |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 165 PRESSURE MENU   | ESP: 0.1-20<br>HPS: 0.1-30<br>PCP: 0.1-20   | ESP: 0.5<br>HPS: 0.5<br>PCP: 0.5                |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE THE PRESSURE CONTROL RAMP.  |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 166 PRESSURE MENU   | ESP: 1-10000<br>HPS: 1-7200<br>PCP: 1-10000 | ESP: 1<br>HPS: 1<br>PCP: 1                      |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE THE PRESSURE CONTROL RAMP.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 167 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: YES, NO                                | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO                   |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO ENABLE OR DISABLE THE UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OPTION. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 168 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: 0-86400                                | ESP: 0<br>HPS: 0<br>PCP: 0                      |
| ENTER THE ALLOWABLE TIME FOR OPERATION IN AN UNDER PRESSURE CONDITION DURING STARTUP. THIS IS HOW LONG AN UNDER PRESSURE CONDITION WILL BE IGNORED DURING THE STARTUP. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 169 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: 0-86400                                | ESP: 0<br>HPS: 0<br>PCP: 0                      |
| ENTER THE UNDER PRESSURE ACTIVATION DELAY TIME. THIS DELAY ALLOWS OPERATION IN AN UNDER PRESSURE CONDITION FOR THE TIME SET. THE ACTIVATION DELAY TIMER WILL CAUSE AN UNDER PRESSURE CONDITION TO BE IGNORED FOR THE TIME ENTERED. WHEN THIS TIME IS EXCEEDED A SHUTDOWN WILL OCCUR. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. |   |   |

Figure A-9: Menus 164 to 169

**Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                   |
|---|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 170 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: YES, NO                       | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO       |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO TOGGLE THIS ENTRY. IF AUTO RESTART IS "YES", WHEN AN UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                                    |                                     |
| 171 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: 1-9999                        | ESP: 1<br>HPS: 3<br>PCP: 1          |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWNS. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS ON UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWNS. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGGLED FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS.  |                                    |                                     |
| 172 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: TIME, PRESSURE-TIME, PRESSURE | ESP: TIME<br>HPS: TIME<br>PCP: TIME |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO SELECT TIME OR PRESSURE AUTO RESTART. IF TIME IS SELECTED, THE VSD WILL WAIT FOR THE AMOUNT OF TIME IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER BEFORE AN AUTO RESTART IS ATTEMPTED. IF PRESSURE IS SELECTED, THE VSD WILL WAIT FOR THE PRESSURE INPUT TO RISE ABOVE THE SETTING IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER BEFORE AN AUTO RESTART IS ATTEMPTED. PRESSURE CONTROL MODE AND AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. |                                    |                                     |
| 173 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: 1-20000                       | ESP: 1<br>HPS: 1<br>PCP: 1          |
| AFTER AN UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE PRESSURE RECOVERS TO THE LEVEL ENTERED IN THIS PARAMETER. (THE LEVEL ENTERED MUST BE ABOVE THE MINIMUM PRESSURE TRIP POINT). AUTO MODE, AUTO RESTART, AND PRESSURE CONTROL MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. UNDER PRESSURE RESTART TYPE MUST ALSO BE SELECTED TO "PRESSURE" FOR THE FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.                     |                                    |                                     |
| 174 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: 1-864000                      | ESP: 1800<br>HPS: 1800<br>PCP: 1800 |
| AFTER AN UNDER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THIS PARAMETER. AUTO MODE, AUTO RESTART, AND PRESSURE CONTROL MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. UNDER PRESSURE RESTART TYPE MUST ALSO BE SELECTED TO "TIME" FOR THE FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                                    |                                     |

**Figure A-10: Menus 170 to 174****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
|---|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 175 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: _0-864000  | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0    |
| THIS VALUE IS ADDED TO THE AUTO RESTART DELAY TIMER EACH TIME A RESTART OCCURS. THIS FUNCTIONALITY IS USEFUL IN PRESSURE PUMP OFF TESTING. AUTO MODE, AUTO RESTART, AND PRESSURE CONTROL MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. UNDER PRESSURE RESTART TYPE MUST ALSO BE SELECTED TO "TIME" FOR THE FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. FOR EXAMPLE, WITH THE AUTO RESTART SET AT 60 MINUTES AND THE NUMBER OF ALLOWED RESTARTS SET TO 5 AND THE INCREMENT VALUE WAS SET TO 0 MINUTES, THEN THE TIME BETWEEN RESTARTS WOULD BE 60, 60, 60, 60, AND 60. IF THE INCREMENT VALUE WAS SET TO 30 MINUTES INSTEAD OF 0, THEN THE TIME BETWEEN RESTARTS WOULD BE 90, 120, 150, 180, AND 210. |                 |                                  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
| 176 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: YES, NO    | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO    |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO ENABLE OR DISABLE THE OVER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OPTION. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                 |                                  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
| 177 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: _1-864000  | ESP: _30<br>HPS: _30<br>PCP: _30 |
| ENTER THE ALLOWABLE TIME FOR OPERATION IN AN OVER PRESSURE CONDITION DURING STARTUP. THIS IS HOW LONG AN OVER PRESSURE CONDITION WILL BE IGNORED DURING THE STARTUP. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |                                  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
| 178 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: _1-864000  | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1    |
| ENTER THE OVER PRESSURE ACTIVATION DELAY TIME. THIS DELAY ALLOWS OPERATION IN AN OVER PRESSURE CONDITION FOR THE TIME SET. THE ACTIVATION DELAY TIMER WILL CAUSE AN OVER PRESSURE CONDITION TO BE IGNORED FOR THE TIME ENTERED. WHEN THIS TIME IS EXCEEDED A SHUTDOWN WILL OCCUR. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                 |                                  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                |
| 179 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: YES, NO    | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO    |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO TOGGLE THIS ENTRY. IF AUTO RESTART IS "YES", WHEN AN OVER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |                                  |

**Figure A-11: Menus 175 to 179****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
|---|--------------------|---|
| 180 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __1-9999      | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __3<br>PCP: __1                |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER OVER PRESSURE SHUTDOWNS. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS ON OVER PRESSURE SHUTDOWNS. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGLGING FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS. |                    |   |
| 181 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __1-864000    | ESP: __1800<br>HPS: __1800<br>PCP: __1800       |
| AFTER AN OVER PRESSURE SHUTDOWN OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THIS PARAMETER. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                    |   |
| 182 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __PID, NORMAL | ESP: __NORMAL<br>HPS: __NORMAL<br>PCP: __NORMAL |
| WHEN THIS PARAMETER IS SELECTED TO YES IT WILL ENABLE THE PID CONTROL FOR THE VSD. THE TARGET PRESSURE WILL BECOME THE SET POINT, THE INPUT SELECTION WILL BECOME THE PROCESS VARIABLE INPUT, THE SPEED UP OR SLOW DOWN WITH PRESSURE RISE WILL BECOME THE CONTROL ACTION, THE CONTROL RAMP HZ AND SECONDS WILL BE DISABLED.      |                    |   |
| 183 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __0-10        | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1                |
| THIS IS THE PROPORTIONAL SETTING FOR THE PID CONTROL LOOP.  |                    |   |
| 184 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __0-100.0     | ESP: __0.1<br>HPS: __0.1<br>PCP: __0.1          |
| THIS IS THE INTEGRAL SETTING OF THE PID CONTROL LOOP. THE VALUE ENTERED HERE IS IN REPEATS / MINUTE.  |                    |   |
| 185 PRESSURE MENU   | ALL: __0.0-100.0   | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                |
| THIS IS THE DERIVATIVE SETTING OF THE PID CONTROL LOOP. THE VALUE ENTERED HERE IS IN MINUTES.   |                    |   |

**Figure A-12: Menus 180 to 185****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|--|---|--|
| 200 VSD SETUP MENU   | ALL:__ESP, HPS, PCP                         | ESP:__ESP<br>HPS:__HPS<br>PCP:__PCP    |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE SELECTIONS. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE SELECTED PUMPING SYSTEM. THIS PARAMETER ALLOWS THE VSD TO PRESET CERTAIN PARAMETERS DEPENDING ON THE TYPE OF APPLICATION. THIS SHOULD ONLY BE CHANGED WHEN RECOMMISSIONING.                        |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 203 VSD SETUP MENU   | ALL:__50-60                                 | ESP:__60<br>HPS:__60<br>PCP:__60       |
| USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE LINE FREQUENCY.   |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 204 VSD SETUP MENU   | ESP:__30-120<br>HPS:__30-70<br>PCP:__30-120 | ESP:__60<br>HPS:__60<br>PCP:__60       |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE BASE SPEED OF THE VSD. THE BASE SPEED IS THE POINT AT WHICH THE VSD WILL REACH ITS MAXIMUM OUTPUT VOLTAGE AT THE FREQUENCY ENTERED. IF 70 IS ENTERED AND THE INPUT VOLTAGE OF THE VSD IS 460 VOLTS, THEN THE VSD WILL OUTPUT 460 VOLTS AT 70 HZ. |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 205 VSD SETUP MENU   | ALL:__YES, NO                               | ESP:__NO<br>HPS:__YES<br>PCP:__NO      |
| USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS THE OPERATOR WILL SELECT "YES" TO HAVE THE VSD AUTO RESTART AFTER A POWER LOSS OR "NO" TO HAVE THE VSD DO NOTHING AFTER A POWER LOSS HAS SHUTDOWN THE VSD. THE VSD MUST BE IN THE AUTO MODE FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.                                |   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 206 VSD SETUP MENU   | ALL:__1-864000                              | ESP:__1800<br>HPS:__1800<br>PCP:__1800 |
| AFTER A POWER LOSS OCCURS, AN AUTOMATIC RESTART WILL BE ATTEMPTED AFTER THE TIME ENTERED IN THIS PARAMETER. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |   |  |

**Figure A-13: Menus 200 to 206****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE           | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                 |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 207 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: _1-9999              | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _3<br>PCP: _1                     |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER POWER LOSSES. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS AFTER POWER LOSSES. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGGLED FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS.   |                           |   |
| 208 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: YES, NO              | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO                     |
| THIS ENABLES OR DISABLES THE DRIVE FROM AUTOMATICALLY STARTING AFTER A PRESET TIME (SET BY MENU 209) WHEN THE DRIVE IS SWITCHED FROM THE OFF TO THE AUTO MODE. THIS MENU AND MENU 209 ONLY AFFECT THE AUTO START TIME AS THE DRIVE IS SWITCHED FROM OFF TO AUTO AND THESE TWO MENUS HAVE NO EFFECT ON ANY OF THE OTHER AUTO RESTART ENABLES OR TIMES.               |                           |   |
| 209 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: _1-864000            | ESP: _1800<br>HPS: _1800<br>PCP: _1800            |
| THIS IS THE TIME THAT THE DRIVE WILL WAIT BEFORE MAKING AN AUTOSTART ATTEMPT AFTER THE DRIVE IS SWITCHED FROM OFF TO AUTO, PROVIDED THAT MENU 208, THE 'TIMED AUTOSTART' IS ENABLED. THIS TIME AND MENU 208 ONLY AFFECT THE AUTO START AS THE DRIVE IS SWITCHED FROM OFF TO AUTO. THESE TWO MENUS HAVE NO EFFECT ON ANY OF THE OTHER AUTO RESTART ENABLES OR TIMES. |                           |   |
| 212 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: CONTROLLED, COASTING | ESP: COASTING<br>HPS: CONTROLLED<br>PCP: COASTING |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE VSD TO COAST TO A STOP OR RAMP TO A STOP. (WARNING SETTING THIS PARAMETER INCORRECTLY CAN CAUSE SERIOUS EQUIPMENT DAMAGE IN SOME APPLICATIONS)  |                           |   |
| 213 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: _104-170             | ESP: _160<br>HPS: _160<br>PCP: _160               |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE HIGHEST TEMPERATURE AT WHICH THE VSD WILL RUN.  |                           |   |

**Figure A-14: Menus 207 to 213****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
|---|-----------------|---|
| 214 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __ -40-50  | ESP: __ -40<br>HPS: __ -40<br>PCP: __ -40 |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE LOWEST TEMPERATURE AT WHICH THE VSD WILL RUN.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
| 215 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __ YES, NO | ESP: __ NO<br>HPS: __ NO<br>PCP: __ NO    |
| SELECTING YES WILL RESET THE MINIMUM/MAXIMUM INTERNAL TEMPERATURES THAT HAVE BEEN RECORDED.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
| 216 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __         | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __             |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE TIME OF THE INTERNAL CLOCK.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
| 217 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __         | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __             |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE DATE OF THE INTERNAL CLOCK.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
| 218 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __ 1-2     | ESP: __ 1<br>HPS: __ 1<br>PCP: __ 2       |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY REVERSE THE DIRECTION OF THE MOTOR BY SCROLLING THROUGH THE CHOICES. DIRECTION IS RELATIVE, DEPENDING ON HOW THE MOTOR IS HOOKED UP THEREFORE THE CHOICES ARE 1 AND 2 INSTEAD OF FORWARD AND REVERSE. |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                         |
| 219 VSD SETUP MENU  | ALL: __ 1-9999  | ESP: __ 24<br>HPS: __ 24<br>PCP: __ 24    |
| THIS IS THE NUMBER OF HOURS THAT THE UNIT MUST RUN BEFORE THE NUMBER OF RESTARTS WILL BE AUTOMATICALLY CLEARED. THIS IS USED SO FAILURES THAT OCCUR INTERMITTENTLY WILL NOT CAUSE A SHUTDOWN THAT REQUIRES USER INTERVENTION TO RESTART.    |                 |   |

**Figure A-15: Menus 214 to 219****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
|--|---------------------|---|
| 240 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__              | ESP:__<br>HPS:__<br>PCP:__                      |
| BY PRESSING ENTER KEY WHILE IN THIS PARAMETER THE CONFIGURATION WILL BE PRINTED TO THE SERIAL PORT ON THE FRONT OF THE OPERATOR INTERFACE. THE DRIVE WILL SHOW "PRINTING CONFIGURATION" TO CANCEL THIS OPERATION THE MENU/ESC KEY MAY BE PRESSED.      |                     |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 241 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__ EVENTS, DAYS | ESP:__ EVENTS<br>HPS:__ EVENTS<br>PCP:__ EVENTS |
| BY USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SELECT THE EVENTS OR DAYS BACK THAT IS TO BE PRINTED. THE NUMBER OF EVENTS OR DAYS TO BE PRINTED IS ENTERED IN THE NEXT PARAMETER.  |                     |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 242 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__1-1000        | ESP:__20<br>HPS:__20<br>PCP:__20                |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER HERE HOW MANY EVENTS OR DAYS OF HISTORY ARE TO BE PRINTED.   |                     |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 243 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__              | ESP:__<br>HPS:__<br>PCP:__                      |
| BY PRESSING ENTER KEY WHILE IN THIS PARAMETER THE HISTORY FILE BE PRINTED TO THE SERIAL PORT ON THE FRONT OF THE OPERATOR INTERFACE. THE DRIVE WILL SHOW "PRINTING HISTORY" TO CANCEL THIS OPERATION THE MENU/ESC KEY MAY BE PRESSED.                  |                     |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 244 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__ YES, NO      | ESP:__ YES<br>HPS:__ YES<br>PCP:__ YES          |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY ENABLE OR DISABLE THE DATA LOGGING FUNCTIONS.  |                     |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE     | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 245 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__1-480         | ESP:__15<br>HPS:__15<br>PCP:__15                |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE AMOUNT OF TIME (IN MINUTES) BETWEEN EACH LOG CYCLE. BY ENTERING A SMALL NUMBER THE DATA IS LOGGED MORE OFTEN AND CAN GIVE MORE INFORMATION WHEN ANALYZED, THIS MAY BE USEFUL FOR TROUBLE SHOOTING WELL PROBLEMS. |                     |   |

**Figure A-16: Menus 240 to 245****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
|--|--------------------|--|
| 246 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__EVENTS, DAYS | ESP:__EVENTS<br>HPS:__EVENTS<br>PCP:__EVENTS |
| BY USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SELECT THE EVENTS OR DAYS BACK THAT IS TO BE PRINTED. THE NUMBER OF EVENTS OR DAYS TO BE PRINTED IS ENTERED IN THE NEXT PARAMETER.  |                    |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
| 247 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__1-1000       | ESP:__20<br>HPS:__20<br>PCP:__20             |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER HOW MANY EVENTS OR DAYS OF LOGGED DATA ARE TO BE PRINTED.  |                    |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
| 248 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__             | ESP:__<br>HPS:__<br>PCP:__                   |
| BY PRESSING ENTER KEY WHILE IN THIS PARAMETER THE LOGGED DATA FILE BE PRINTED TO THE SERIAL PORT ON THE FRONT OF THE OPERATOR INTERFACE. THE DRIVE WILL SHOW "PRINTING LOG DATA" TO CANCEL THIS OPERATION THE MENU/ESC KEY MAY BE PRESSED. |                    |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
| 250 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__             | ESP:__<br>HPS:__<br>PCP:__                   |
| SELECT THE ITEM THAT WILL BE PRINTED AS A GRAPH AGAINST TIME. MENU 251 SETS THE NUMBER OF DAYS TO GRAPH, MENU 252 THE GRAPH SCALE AND MENU 252 STARTS THE GRAPH PRINTING.  |                    |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
| 251 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__1-100        | ESP:__2<br>HPS:__2<br>PCP:__2                |
| SELECT THE NUMBER OF DAYS TO GRAPH. MENU 250 SELECTS THE ITEM TO GRAPH, MENU 252 THE GRAPH SCALE HEIGHT AND MENU 253 STARTS THE GRAPH PRINTING.  |                    |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE    | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
| 252 PRINT MENU   | ALL:__1.0-9999     | ESP:__90.0<br>HPS:__90.0<br>PCP:__90.0       |
| THE MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF THE GRAPH SCALE MAY BE SET HERE. THIS ALLOWS THE GRAPH TO BE SCALED IN OR OUT TO SHOW AREAS OF INTEREST.   |                    |  |

**Figure A-17: Menus 246 to 252****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| 253 PRINT MENU  | ALL:__          | ESP:__<br>HPS:__<br>PCP:__  |
| ONCE THE GRAPH PRINT SETTINGS HAVE BEEN ENTERED USING MENUS 250,251 AND 252 THIS MENU LETS THE USER START OR STOP THE GRAPH PRINTING.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 261 PRINT MENU  | ALL:__          | ESP: VSD OUTPUT CURRENT<br>HPS: VSD OUTPUT CURRENT<br>PCP: VSD OUTPUT CURRENT |
| THIS MENU SELECTS THE PARAMETERS TO BE LOGGED TO THE DATALOG FILE. THIS SELECTION CAN BE CHANGED AT ANY TIME. AN ENTRY WITH VALUES EQUAL TO 999.9 INDICATE A CHANGE WAS MADE, HOWEVER THE PARAMETER NAME IS NOT STORED INSIDE THE LOG FILE. AS A RESULT, THE VALUES INSIDE THE LOG FILE MAY NOT MATCH THE HEADER AT THE TIME LOGDATA IS DOWNLOADED. REFER TO THE HISTORY FILE FOR THE CORRECT SELECTION HEADER IF CHANGE IS INDICATED BY A 999.9 STAMP. VALUES WILL ALWAYS MATCH THE HEADER WHEN MOVING BACK IN TIME FROM THE HEADER TO THE POINT A 999.9 STAMP IS REACHED. MEASURED CURRENT WILL BE EITHER VSD OR MOTOR AMPS SHOWN IN MENU # 108 . VSD OUTPUT CURRENT WILL ALWAYS REFLECT VSD OUTPUT. FREQUENCY OUTPUT WILL REFLECT THE ACTUAL RUNNING FREQ OF VSD INCLUDING STALL CONDITIONS. PRESSURE INPUT WILL REFLECT THE ANALOG INPUT SELECTED IN MENU # 163. POWER OUTPUT IS IN KW UNITS. |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 262 PRINT MENU  | ALL:__          | ESP: FREQUENCY OUTPUT<br>HPS: FREQUENCY OUTPUT<br>PCP: FREQUENCY OUTPUT       |
| SEE MENU # 261 HELP TEXT  |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 263 PRINT MENU  | ALL:__          | ESP: PRESSURE INPUT<br>HPS: PRESSURE INPUT<br>PCP: PRESSURE INPUT             |
| SEE MENU # 261 HELP TEXT  |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 320 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__          | ESP: HAND<br>HPS: NONE<br>PCP: HAND   |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES THAT WILL CAUSE A CONTACT CLOSURE ON THIS SPECIFIC RELAY OUTPUT.   |                 |   |

**Figure A-18: Menus 253 to 320****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
|---|-----------------|---|
| 321 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__          | ESP:__OFF<br>HPS:__OFF<br>PCP:__OFF             |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES THAT WILL CAUSE A CONTACT CLOSURE ON THIS SPECIFIC RELAY OUTPUT.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 322 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__          | ESP:__AUTO<br>HPS:__AUTO<br>PCP:__AUTO          |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES THAT WILL CAUSE A CONTACT CLOSURE ON THIS SPECIFIC RELAY OUTPUT.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 323 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__          | ESP:__RUNNING<br>HPS:__RUNNING<br>PCP:__RUNNING |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES THAT WILL CAUSE A CONTACT CLOSURE ON THIS SPECIFIC RELAY OUTPUT.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 330 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__0-86399   | ESP:__60<br>HPS:__60<br>PCP:__60                |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE ENERGIZED TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD TURN ON IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY ON.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 331 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__0-86399   | ESP:__120<br>HPS:__120<br>PCP:__120             |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE DE-ENERGIZE TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD GO OFF IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY OFF. |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 332 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL:__0-86399   | ESP:__60<br>HPS:__60<br>PCP:__60                |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE ENERGIZED TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD TURN ON IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY ON.   |                 |   |

**Figure A-19: Menus 321 to 332****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 333 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL: _0-86399               | ESP: _120<br>HPS: _120<br>PCP: _120    |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE DE-ENERGIZE TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD GO OFF IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY OFF. |                             |  |
| 334 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL: _0-86399               | ESP: _60<br>HPS: _60<br>PCP: _60       |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE ENERGIZED TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD TURN ON IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY ON.   |                             |  |
| 335 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL: _0-86399               | ESP: _120<br>HPS: _120<br>PCP: _120    |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE DE-ENERGIZE TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD GO OFF IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY OFF. |                             |  |
| 336 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL: _0-86399               | ESP: _60<br>HPS: _60<br>PCP: _60       |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE ENERGIZED TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD TURN ON IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY ON.   |                             |  |
| 337 OUTPUT MENU   | ALL: _0-86399               | ESP: _120<br>HPS: _120<br>PCP: _120    |
| THIS PARAMETER SETS THE DE-ENERGIZE TIME FOR THE RELAY. IF THE RELAY ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "TIME OF DAY" ENTER THE TIME OF DAY THE RELAY SHOULD GO OFF IF ASSIGNMENT IS SET TO "ABSOLUTE TIME" SET TO THE DURATION THAT THE RELAY SHOULD STAY OFF. |                             |  |
| 340 COMM MENU   | ALL: _FULL, READ ONLY, NONE | ESP: _FULL<br>HPS: _FULL<br>PCP: _FULL |
| USE THE UP AND DOWN KEYS TO SELECT THE ACCESS ALLOWED FOR THE SCADA SYSTEM.   |                             |  |

**Figure A-20: Menus 333 to 340****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE  | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
|--|--|--|
| 341 COMM MENU  | ALL: _1-247  | ESP: __1<br>HPS: __100<br>PCP: __1                             |
| ENTER THE SCADA ADDRESS THAT HAS BEEN ASSIGNED TO THE VSD FOR COMMUNICATIONS. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE NEW VALUE.   |  |  |
| 342 COMM MENU  | ALL: _300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 33600-300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 33600                                    | ESP: __9600<br>HPS: __9600<br>PCP: __9600                      |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE BAUD RATE SELECTIONS. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE DISPLAYED SETTING.   |  |  |
| 343 COMM MENU  | ALL: __7N1, 7E1, 7O1, 7N2, 7E2, 7O2, 8N1, 8E1, 8O1, 8N2, 8E2, 8O2-7N1, 7E1, 7O1, 7N2, 7E2, 7O2, 8N1, 8E1, 8O1, 8N2, 8E2, 8O2 | ESP: __8N1<br>HPS: __8N1<br>PCP: __8N1                         |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE DATA MODE CHOICES TO SET THE DATA BITS, PARITY, AND STOP BITS. FOR EXAMPLE, 8N1 IS 8 DATA BITS WITH NO PARITY AND 1 STOP BIT. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE DISPLAYED SETTING. 7 DATA BITS CAN ONLY BE SELECTED IF THE PROTOCOL IS SELECTED AS ASCII.                              |  |  |
| 344 COMM MENU  | ALL: __ASCII, RTU  | ESP: __RTU<br>HPS: __RTU<br>PCP: __RTU                         |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE PROTOCOL SELECTIONS. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE DISPLAYED SETTING. RTU CAN ONLY BE SELECTED IF THE DATA MODE IS SELECTED TO 8 DATA BITS.  |  |  |
| 345 COMM MENU  | ALL: __ENABLED, TIME & DATE, DISABLED  | ESP: __TIME & DATE<br>HPS: __TIME & DATE<br>PCP: __TIME & DATE |
| USE THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS TO SCROLL THROUGH THE SELECTIONS. PRESS ENTER TO ACCEPT THE DISPLAYED SETTING. THIS CONTROLS WHAT SCADA BROADCAST MESSAGES WILL BE ACCEPTED. ENABLED WILL ACCEPT ALL BROADCAST MESSAGES, DISABLED WILL ACCEPT NO BROADCAST MESSAGES. TIME & DATE WILL ONLY ACCEPT MESSAGES TO SET THE TIME AND DATE. |  |  |
| 346 COMM MENU  | ALL: __  | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __                                  |
| THIS PARAMTER IS USED TO ENVOKE THE TRANSFER MODE TO INSTALL A NEW CONFIGURATION INTO THE HMI. ATTACHING A PC WITH THE APPROPRIATE SOFTWARE AND PRESSING ENTER WILL TRANSFER INFORMATION. ONLY QUALIFIED PERSONNEL SHOULD USE THIS PARAMETER.  |  |  |

**Figure A-21: Menus 341 to 346****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|---|-----------------|--|
| 347 COMM MENU   | ALL: __         | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __          |
| **CAUTION** ACTIVATES HYPERTERMINAL FILE TRANSFER COMPATABLE ONLY<br>!!!! FOLLOW UPGRADE INSTRUCTIONS WITH UPGRADE FILESET.   |                 |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 450 DRIVE TUNING  | ALL: __0.5-3.0  | ESP: __2.2<br>HPS: __2.2<br>PCP: __2.2 |
| THIS IS THE INTERNAL MODULATION FREQUENCY OF THE PWM WAVE FORM<br>PRODUCED BY THE VSD. ** WARNING ** FREQUENCIES ABOVE 2.2 KHZ WILL<br>RESULT IN REDUCED DRIVE CAPACITY. CONTACT REDA ELECTRONICS FOR<br>MORE INFORMATION REGARDING THIS ADJUSTMENT.  |                 |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 451 DRIVE TUNING  | ALL: __YES, NO  | ESP: __YES<br>HPS: __YES<br>PCP: __YES |
| THE DEFAULT VALUE OF "YES" WILL ENABLE STALL PROTECTION ON THE VSD.<br>THE STALL THRESHOLD LEVEL IS SET VIA MENU 452.   |                 |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 452 DRIVE TUNING  | ALL: __10-215   | ESP: __120<br>HPS: __120<br>PCP: __120 |
| THE DEFAULT VALUE OF 120% IS THE STANDARD THRESHOLD WHERE SOFT<br>STALL AUTO FREQUENCY REDUCTION WILL OCCUR AFTER 1 MINUTE OF<br>OPERATING IN THE OVERLOAD CONDITION, PROVIDED THAT MENU 451 IS SET<br>TO ENABLE SOFT STALL.  |                 |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 454 DRIVE TUNING  | ALL: __YES, NO  | ESP: __NO<br>HPS: __NO<br>PCP: __NO    |
| THE DEFAULT SETTING OF "ENABLED" ALLOWS THE DRIVE TO LOOK FOR A<br>SPINNING MOTOR AND IF FOUND, CATCH THE MOTOR IN THE DIRECTION THAT<br>IS SPINNING, AND APPLY DECELERATION AND/OR ACCELERATION AS<br>NEEDED TO RUN THE MOTOR IN THE DESIRED DIRECTION AND AT THE DESIRED<br>FREQUENCY IN THE MINIMUM TIME ALLOWED BY THE CONFIGURATION OF THE<br>DRIVE. |                 |  |

**Figure A-22: Menus 347 to 454****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE           | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                            |
|--|---------------------------|--|
| 455 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: __INPUT, AUTO, FIXED | ESP: __INPUT<br>HPS: __INPUT<br>PCP: __INPUT |
| SELECT THE BASE FREQUENCY VOLTAGE REFERENCE USING THIS MENU, WHEN THE DRIVE IS NOT OPERATING. IF THE DRIVE IS RUNNING THEN CHANGES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED, AND THE ORIGINAL SETTING WILL REMAIN INTACT. THIS MENU ALLOWS THE OPERATOR TO SELECT THE REFERENCE VALUE THAT DETERMINES THE VOLTAGE OUTPUT OF THE DRIVE WHEN THE DRIVE IS OPERATING AT THE DESIRED BASE FREQUENCY. THE "INPUT" SETTING REQUIRES THAT THE OUTPUT VOLTAGE FLUCTUATE WITH THE INPUT VOLTAGE CONTINUOUSLY. "AUTO" MODE FIXES THE BASE FREQUENCY OUTPUT VOLTAGE TO THE LEVEL OF THE INPUT VOLTAGE AT THE TIME THAT THE DRIVE IS FIRST POWERED. THE "FIXED" SETTING REQUIRES THAT THE DRIVE USE THE VALUE SET VIA THE NEXT MENU ITEM AS THE DESIRED VOLTAGE WHEN THE DRIVE IS RUNNING AT BASE SPEED. |                           |  |
| 456 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: __0-500              | ESP: __460<br>HPS: __460<br>PCP: __460       |
| THIS IS THE MAXIMUM RMS VOLTAGE THAT IS OUTPUT WHEN THE DRIVE IS RUNNING AT OR ABOVE THE BASE FREQUENCY. IT IS ONLY USED IF MENU 455 IS SET TO FIXED, OTHERWISE IT IS IGNORED.   |                           |  |
| 458 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: __0.0-10.0           | ESP: __7.0<br>HPS: __1.0<br>PCP: __7.0       |
| THIS WILL BE THE INITIAL FREQUENCY OUTPUT BY THE DRIVE WHEN FIRST STARTED. THIS MAY BE USED TO PREVENT THE DRIVE STARTING AT FREQUENCIES BELOW THOSE SPECIFIED BY THE TRANSFORMER MANUFACTURER. ONCE STARTED THE DRIVE WILL RAMP UP FROM THIS SPEED TO THE MINIMUM SPEED AT THE RATE SET BY MENUS 470 AND 471.   |                           |  |
| 459 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: __0.0-30.0           | ESP: __1.0<br>HPS: __1.0<br>PCP: __1.0       |
| THIS ADJUSTS THE PERCENT INCREASE IN OUTPUT VOLTAGE WHEN THE DRIVE STARTS. VOLTAGE BOOST CEASES AT A FREQUENCY OF 12.0HZ, AFTER WHICH, THE SELECTED VOLTS PER HERTZ (MENU 460) DETERMINES THE RMS OUTPUT VOLTAGE OF THE DRIVE.   |                           |  |

**Figure A-23: Menus 455 to 459****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
|--|---|---|
| 460 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: CONSTANT, VARIABLE, AUTO BOOST, AUTO BOOST ES, VECTOR CONTROL, VECTOR CONTROL ES | ESP: CONSTANT<br>HPS: CONSTANT<br>PCP: CONSTANT |
| THIS PARAMETER MAY BE CHANGED ONLY WHEN THE DRIVE IS IN THE OFF MODE. USE THIS PARAMETER TO SELECT THE VOLTS PER HERTZ PATTERN USED TO START AND CHANGE THE SPEED OF THE MOTOR. DIFFERENT LEVELS AND PATTERNS OF TORQUE, PERFORMANCE AND ENERGY SAVINGS ARE POSSIBLE. "CONSTANT" TORQUE MODE IS THE DEFAULT SETTING FOR THE SPEEDSTAR 2000 VSD. USE OF THE VECTOR CONTROL MODES WILL REQUIRE THAT THE MOTOR HORSEPOWER BE ENTERED IN THE MENU #850. VERIFY THAT THE NUMBER OF MOTOR POLES MATCHES THE VALUE ENTERED IN MENU #462 |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 461 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: SMALL, MEDIUM, LARGE, VERY LARGE   | ESP: SMALL<br>HPS: SMALL<br>PCP: SMALL          |
| THIS SPECIFIES THE RELATIVE MOMENT OF INERTIA FOR THE PUMP / MOTOR COMBINATION. ALL NORMAL REDA ESP EQUIPMENT HAS A SMALL MOMENT OF INERTIA. THIS PARAMETER IS ONLY EFFECTIVE IF MENU 460 IS SET TO 'VECTOR' CONTROL.  |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 462 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: 2-6  | ESP: 2<br>HPS: 2<br>PCP: 4                      |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF MOTOR POLES 2,4 OR 6 THIS NUMBER IS USED BY VECTOR CONTROL COMPUTATIONS WHEN MENU 460 IS SET FOR VECTOR MODE AND MENUS #461 AND #850 HAVE ALSO BEEN CONFIGURED.  |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 470 DRIVE TUNING   | ESP: 0.1-20<br>HPS: 0.1-30<br>PCP: 0.1-20   | ESP: 10<br>HPS: 2<br>PCP: 6                     |
| THIS AND MENU 471 DEFINE THE RAMP RATE AS THE DRIVE ACCELERATES FROM THE STARTING FREQUENCY (MENU 458) TO THE MINIMUM RUNNING FREQUENCY (MENU 122). THIS IS THE NUMBER OF HZ THAT THE DRIVE WILL CHANGE BY IN THE TIME DEFINED BY MENU 471.  |   |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                               |
| 471 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: 1-10000  | ESP: 1<br>HPS: 1<br>PCP: 1                      |
| THIS AND MENU 470 DEFINE THE RAMP RATE AS THE DRIVE ACCELERATES FROM THE STARTING FREQUENCY (MENU 458) TO THE MINIMUM RUNNING FREQUENCY (MENU 122). THIS IS THE NUMBER OF SECONDS THAT THE DRIVE WILL TAKE TO CHANGE BY THE NUMBER OF HZ DEFINED IN MENU 470.  |   |   |

**Figure A-24: Menus 460 to 471****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE  | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                  |
|--|--|--|
| 472 DRIVE TUNING   | ESP: <u>0.1-20</u><br>HPS: <u>0.1-30</u><br>PCP: <u>0.1-20</u> | ESP: <u>6</u><br>HPS: <u>2</u><br>PCP: <u>6</u>    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE FOLLOWING PARAMETER DEFINE THE ACCELERATION RAMP FROM MIN SPEED TO TARGET SPEED.  |  |  |
| 473 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: <u>1-9999</u>   | ESP: <u>1</u><br>HPS: <u>1</u><br>PCP: <u>1</u>    |
| THIS PARAMETER AND THE PREVIOUS PARAMETER DEFINE THE ACCELERATION RAMP FROM MIN SPEED TO TARGET SPEED. TARGET SPEED MUST BE REACHED BEFORE THE SELECTED CONTROL MODE IS ENTERED. THIS IS TRUE FOR SPEED, CURRENT AND PRESSURE MODES.   |  |  |
| 474 DRIVE TUNING   | ESP: <u>0.1-20</u><br>HPS: <u>0.1-30</u><br>PCP: <u>0.1-20</u> | ESP: <u>3</u><br>HPS: <u>3</u><br>PCP: <u>3</u>    |
| THIS AND MENU 475 DEFINE THE RAMP RATE DURING A CONTROLLED STOP. THIS IS THE NUMBER OF HZ THAT THE DRIVE WILL CHANGE BY IN THE TIME DEFINED BY MENU 475. THIS SETS THE DECELERATION RAMP RATE AS THE DRIVE CHANGES FROM RUNNING TO STOP. IT IS ONLY USED WHEN THE STOP MODE (MENU 212) IS SET TO 'CONTROLLED', OTHERWISE IT IS IGNORED.  |  |  |
| 475 DRIVE TUNING   | ALL: <u>1-10000</u>  | ESP: <u>1</u><br>HPS: <u>1</u><br>PCP: <u>1</u>    |
| THIS AND MENU 474 DEFINE THE RAMP RATE DURING A CONTROLLED STOP. THIS IS THE NUMBER OF SECONDS THAT THE DRIVE WILL TAKE TO CHANGE BY THE NUMBER OF HZ DEFINED IN MENU 474. THIS SETS THE DECELERATION RAMP RATE AS THE DRIVE CHANGES FROM RUNNING TO STOP. IT IS ONLY USED WHEN THE STOP MODE (MENU 212) IS SET TO 'CONTROLLED', OTHERWISE IT IS IGNORED.                                    |  |  |
| 500 SPECIAL CONTROLS   | ALL: <u>YES, NO</u>  | ESP: <u>NO</u><br>HPS: <u>NO</u><br>PCP: <u>NO</u> |
| THIS ALLOWS 'ROCKING STARTS' TO BE TURNED ON OR OFF. A 'ROCKING START' MAY BE ATTEMPTED TO FREE A STUCK MOTOR OR PUMP. IT WILL CAUSE THE VSD TO RAPIDLY JERK THE MOTOR BACKWARDS AND FORWARDS BEFORE TRYING TO BRING THE VSD UP TO NORMAL SPEED. THE NUMBER OF JERK ATTEMPTS AND THE SPEED OF THEM MAY ALSO BE SET. FOR NORMAL OPERATION THIS SETTING WOULD BE DISABLED BY BEING SET TO 'NO' |  |  |

**Figure A-25: Menus 472 to 500****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|---|--|--|
| 501 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ALL: _1-20   | ESP: _4<br>HPS: _4<br>PCP: _4          |
| THIS IS THE NUMBER OF TIMES THE MOTOR WILL 'ROCK' BACKWARDS AND FORWARDS WHEN 'ROCKING START' IS ENABLED.   |  |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 502 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ESP: _10.0-20.0<br>HPS: _10.0-20<br>PCP: _10.0-20.0  | ESP: _5.0<br>HPS: _5.0<br>PCP: _5.0    |
| THIS WILL BE THE VSD FREQUENCY THAT ROCKING STARTS WILL BE RUN AT. THE VSD WILL RAPIDLY CHANGE BETWEEN FORWARD AND BACKWARDS, 'JOGGING' AT THIS FREQUENCY. AFTER THE 'NUMBER OF ROCKS' HAVE BEEN EXCEEDED THE VSD WILL ATTEMPT TO RAMP UP AND RUN AT THE NORMAL RUNNING SETTINGS. THIS VALUE MAY BE BETWEEN 10.0 AND 20.0 HZ. A SMALLER SETTING MAY BE MORE EFFECTIVE ON HIGH INERTIA SYSTEMS |  |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 503 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ALL: _1-3  | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1          |
| THERE ARE THREE ROCKING START METHODS THAT MAY BE ATTEMPTED. SOME OPERATE MORE AGGRESSIVELY THAN OTHERS, AND MAY RESULT IN REDUCTION OF ROCKING TORQUE DUE TO DIFFERENT MOTOR AND LOAD CHARACTERISTICS.   |  |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 510 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ALL: _YES, NO  | ESP: _NO<br>HPS: _NO<br>PCP: _NO       |
| THIS ALLOWS THE USER TO ENABLE OR DISABLE SPEED FORCE CAPABILITY. ONCE ENABLED THE DRIVE WILL RUN AT THE SPEED SPECIFIED IN MENU 511 WHENEVER THE AUXILIARY INPUT SPECIFIED IN MENU 512 IS ACTIVE. THIS IS ONLY USED FOR SPECIAL APPLICATIONS AND IS NORMALLY DISABLED.   |  |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 511 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ESP: _20.0-90.0<br>HPS: _20.0-90.0<br>PCP: _8.0-70.0 | ESP: _55.0<br>HPS: _60.0<br>PCP: _20.0 |
| THIS WILL BE THE VSD FREQUENCY THAT THE DRIVE WILL RUN AT IF MENU 510 IS ENABLED AND THE AUX. INPUT SPECIFIED IN MENU 512 IS ACTIVE.  |  |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE                                      | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
| 512 SPECIAL CONTROLS  | ALL: _1-8  | ESP: _8<br>HPS: _8<br>PCP: _8          |
| THIS IS THE DIGITAL AUX INPUT NUMBER THAT WILL BE USED FOR SPEED FORCE IF MENU 510 IS ENABLED.  |  |  |

**Figure A-26: Menus 501 to 512****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
|--|-------------------|--|
| 610 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _1-8         | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1                            |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY SELECT AN INPUT ON WHICH ALL OF THE FOLLOWING AUXILIARY MENUS WILL BE BASED.   |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
| 611 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: YES, NO      | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO                            |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS YOU MAY CHOOSE TO DISPLAY THIS AUXILIARY INPUT ON THE STATUS SCREEN AT THE BOTTOM. IF ANY INPUTS ARE SELECTED TO BE DISPLAYED, THE UP AND DOWN KEYS CAN BE USED ON THE STATUS SCREEN TO PAGE THROUGH THE DIFFERENT INPUTS. |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
| 612 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _            | ESP: AUXILIARY #<br>HPS: AUXILIARY #<br>PCP: AUXILIARY # |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ASSIGN AN ALPHANUMERIC NAME TO THIS SPECIFIC INPUT.  |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
| 613 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: YES, NO      | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO                            |
| BY USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS YOU CAN CHOOSE EITHER YES OR NO TO HAVE THE EQUIPMENT SHUTDOWN OR STAY RUNNING IN THE EVENT OF THIS AUXILIARY INPUT BECOMING ACTIVE. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.                           |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
| 614 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: OPEN, CLOSED | ESP: CLOSED<br>HPS: CLOSED<br>PCP: CLOSED                |
| BY USING THE UP OR DOWN ARROW KEYS YOU CAN CHOOSE WHAT INPUT STATE WILL BE CONSIDERED ACTIVE. (THE PREVIOUS MENU MUST BE SET TO YES FOR THIS PARAMETER TO WORK)  |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT  |
| 615 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _0-864000    | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1                            |
| ENTER THE ALLOWABLE TIME FOR OPERATION WHILE THIS AUXILIARY INPUT IS ACTIVE DURING STARTUP. THIS IS HOW LONG THIS AUXILIARY INPUT WILL BE IGNORED DURING STARTUP.  |                   |  |

**Figure A-27: Menus 610 to 615****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
|--|-----------------|---|
| 616 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _0-864000  | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1   |
| THIS AUXILIARY INPUT MUST BE ACTIVE FOR THE TIME ENTERED BEFORE A SHUTDOWN WILL OCCUR.   |                 |   |
| 617 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: YES, NO    | ESP: NO<br>HPS: NO<br>PCP: NO   |
| USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS YOU WILL SELECT "YES" TO HAVE AN AUTO RESTART AFTER THIS INPUT CAUSES A SHUTDOWN OR "NO" TO DO NOTHING AFTER THIS INPUT CAUSES A SHUTDOWN. AUTO MODE MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.  |                 |   |
| 618 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _1-9999    | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _1<br>PCP: _1   |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER THIS INPUT HAS CAUSED A SHUTDOWN. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS AFTER A SHUTDOWN. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGLGING FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS. |                 |   |
| 619 AUX. INPUT MENU  | ALL: _0-864000  | ESP: _1800<br>HPS: _1800<br>PCP: _1800                                  |
| THE RESTART DELAY TIMER VALUE IS HOW LONG TO WAIT BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO RESTART AFTER THIS INPUT CAUSES A SHUTDOWN. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |   |
| 700 ANALOG OUT MENU  | ALL: _          | ESP: OUTPUT FREQUENCY<br>HPS: OUTPUT FREQUENCY<br>PCP: OUTPUT FREQUENCY |
| SELECTS THE FUNCTION OF THE FM TERMINAL. REFER TO TOSVERT MANUAL FOR DETAILS.  |                 |   |
| 701 ANALOG OUT MENU  | ALL: _0-65535   | ESP: _5000<br>HPS: _5000<br>PCP: _5000                                  |
| SETS CALIBRATION VALUE TO ANALOG OUPUT. REFER TO TOSVERT MANUAL FOR DETAILS.   |                 |   |

**Figure A-28: Menus 616 to 701****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| 702 ANALOG OUT MENU   | ALL:__          | ESP:__OUTPUT<br>CURRENT<br>HPS:__OUTPUT<br>CURRENT<br>PCP:__OUTPUT<br>CURRENT |
| SELECTS THE FUNCTION OF THE AM TERMINAL. REFER TO TOSVERT MANUAL FOR DETAILS.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 703 ANALOG OUT MENU   | ALL:__0-65535   | ESP:__5000<br>HPS:__5000<br>PCP:__5000  |
| SETS CALIBRATION VALUE TO ANALOG OUPUT. REFER TO TOSVERT MANUAL FOR DETAILS.  |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 800 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL:__1-10      | ESP:__1<br>HPS:__1<br>PCP:__1   |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY SELECT AN INPUT ON WHICH ALL OF THE FOLLOWING ANALOG MENUS WILL BE BASED.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 801 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL:__YES, NO   | ESP:__NO<br>HPS:__NO<br>PCP:__NO  |
| BY USING THE UP AND DOWN KEYS THE OPERATOR MAY CHOSE TO DISPLAY THIS ANALOG INPUT ON THE STATUS SCREEN AT THE BOTTOM. IF OTHER INPUTS ARE SELECTED TO BE DISPLAYED THE UP AND DOWN KEYS CAN BE USED TO SCROLL THE BOTTOM LINE OF THE STATUS SCREEN FOR VIEWING OF THE DIFFERENT INPUTS. |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 802 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL:__          | ESP:__ANALOG INPUT #<br>HPS:__ANALOG INPUT #<br>PCP:__ANALOG INPUT #          |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ASSIGN AN ALPHANUMERIC NAME TO THIS SPECIFIC INPUT.   |                 |   |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT   |
| 803 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL:__YES, NO   | ESP:__NO<br>HPS:__NO<br>PCP:__NO  |
| BY USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS YOU MAY CHOOSE EITHER YES OR NO TO HAVE THE EQUIPMENT SHUTDOWN OR STAY RUNNING IN THE EVENT OF THIS ANALOG INPUT EXCEEDING A TRIP POINT.   |                 |   |

**Figure A-29: Menus 702 to 803****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|--|-----------------|--|
| 804 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL:__0-864000  | ESP:__1<br>HPS:__1<br>PCP:__1          |
| USING THE KEYBOARD THE OPERATOR MAY SELECT HOW LONG THE VSD WILL IGNORE THE CHANGE OF THIS AUXILIARY ALARM DURING THE STARTUP OF THE VSD. THE VSD MUST BE IN THE AUTO MODE FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |  |
| 805 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL:__0-864000  | ESP:__1<br>HPS:__1<br>PCP:__1          |
| THE ACTIVATION DELAY TIMER WILL CAUSE THE VSD TO IGNORE THIS ANALOG INPUT FOR THE AMOUNT OF TIME ENTERED. THE ANALOG INPUT MUST BE OUT OF BOUNDS FOR THE NUMBER SECONDS ENTERED BEFORE THE VSD WILL TAKE SOME SORT OF ACTION TO CURE THE PROBLEM OR SHUTDOWN THE VSD. THE VSD MUST BE IN THE AUTO MODE FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. |                 |  |
| 806 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL:__YES, NO   | ESP:__NO<br>HPS:__NO<br>PCP:__NO       |
| USING THE UP OR DOWN KEYS THE OPERATOR WILL SELECT "YES" TO HAVE THE VSD AUTO RESTART AFTER A SHUTDOWN OR "NO" TO HAVE THE VSD DO NOTHING AFTER THIS ANALOG INPUT HAS SHUTDOWN THE VSD. THE VSD MUST BE IN THE AUTO MODE FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |  |
| 807 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL:__1-9999    | ESP:__1<br>HPS:__1<br>PCP:__1          |
| ENTER THE NUMBER OF AUTO RESTART ATTEMPTS ALLOWED AFTER THIS INPUT HAS CAUSED A SHUTDOWN. THIS VALUE SETS THE NUMBER OF RESTART ATTEMPTS AFTER A SHUTDOWN. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT. TOGLGING FROM HAND MODE TO AUTO MODE WILL RESET THE INTERNAL COUNT OF ATTEMPTED STARTS.         |                 |  |
| 808 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL:__0-864000  | ESP:__1800<br>HPS:__1800<br>PCP:__1800 |
| THE RESTART DELAY TIMER VALUE IS HOW LONG TO WAIT BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO RESTART AFTER THIS INPUT CAUSES A SHUTDOWN. AUTO MODE AND AUTO RESTART MUST BE SELECTED FOR THIS FUNCTION TO TAKE EFFECT.   |                 |  |

**Figure A-30: Menus 804 to 808****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION  | MENU ITEM RANGE  | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                     |
|---|--|---|
| 809 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL: __0-9999  | ESP: __5000<br>HPS: __5000<br>PCP: __5000             |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MAXIMUM ANALOG INPUT ALLOWED DURING OPERATION. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO REMEMBER THAT THE NUMBER ENTERED WILL APPLY TO THE CALIBRATED VALUE FOR THIS INPUT (NOT THE RAW VALUE).  |  |   |
| 810 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL: __-9999-9999  | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                      |
| THIS IS A TRIP POINT IN ALL MODES OF OPERATION TO PROTECT ANY ATTACHED EQUIPMENT. ENTER THE MINIMUM ANALOG INPUT ALLOWED DURING OPERATION. IT IS VERY IMPORTANT TO REMEMBER THAT THE NUMBER ENTERED WILL APPLY TO THE CALIBRATED VALUE FOR THIS INPUT (NOT THE RAW VALUE).  |  |   |
| 811 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL: __AUTO 4-20 MA, AUTO 0-10 V,<br>MANUAL, DISABLED-AUTO 4-20 MA,<br>AUTO 0-10 V, MANUAL, DISABLED | ESP: __DISABLED<br>HPS: __DISABLED<br>PCP: __DISABLED |
| BY USING THE UP / DOWN KEYS YOU MAY SCROLL THROUGH THE CHOICES FOR THE DIFFERENT CALIBRATION METHODS. THE AUTO METHODS WILL CALIBRATE TO THE SELECTED INPUT RANGE WITHOUT THE NEED TO APPLY A CALIBRATION SIGNAL. THE MANUAL METHOD REQUIRES THE APPLICATION OF A CALIBRATION SIGNAL TO THIS ANALOG INPUT. PROPERLY DONE, THE MANUAL CALIBRATION IS MORE ACCURATE.  |  |   |
| 812 ANALOG IN MENU  | ALL: __0-9999  | ESP: __100<br>HPS: __100<br>PCP: __100                |
| THIS IS USED TO CALIBRATE THE HIGH END VALUE OF THIS ANALOG INPUT. FIRST FIND OUT WHAT THE INPUT IS SETUP FOR (4-20 MA, 1-10V). WHEN THIS IS DETERMINED, USING A CALIBRATION DEVICE PLACE THE MAXIMUM SIGNAL ON THE PROPER INPUT TERMINALS. WHILE THE MAXIMUM SIGNAL IS APPLIED, ENTER THE VALUE THAT IS TO BE DISPLAYED ON THE STATUS SCREEN AS THE MAXIMUM INPUT. FOR EXAMPLE, IF YOU WANT 20 MA TO BE DISPLAYED ON THE STATUS SCREEN AS 1000 THEN 20 MA WOULD BE APPLIED TO THE INPUT TERMINALS FOR THIS ANALOG SIGNAL AND 1000 ENTERED IN THE HIGH VALUE. AFTER DOING THIS WHENEVER A 20 MA SIGNAL IS APPLIED TO THE INPUTS OF THIS ANALOG CHANNEL THE VSD WILL DISPLAY 1000. |  |   |

**Figure A-31: Menus 809 to 812****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                        |
|--|-------------------|--|
| 813 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL: __-9999-9999 | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0         |
| THIS IS USED TO CALIBRATE THE LOW END VALUE OF THIS ANALOG INPUT. FIRST FIND OUT WHAT THE INPUT IS SETUP FOR (4-20 MA, 0-10V). WHEN THIS IS DETERMINED, USING A CALIBRATION DEVICE PLACE THE MINIMUM SIGNAL ON THE PROPER INPUT TERMINALS. WHILE THE MINIMUM SIGNAL IS APPLIED, ENTER THE VALUE THAT IS TO BE DISPLAYED ON THE STATUS SCREEN AS THE MINIMUM INPUT. FOR EXAMPLE, IF YOU WANT 4 MA TO BE DISPLAYED ON THE STATUS SCREEN AS 10 THEN 4 MA WOULD BE APPLIED TO THE INPUT TERMINALS FOR THIS ANALOG SIGNAL AND 10 ENTERED IN THE LOW VALUE. AFTER DOING THIS WHENEVER A 4 MA SIGNAL IS APPLIED TO THE INPUTS OF THIS ANALOG CHANNEL THE VSD WILL DISPLAY 10. |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                        |
| 820 ANALOG IN MENU   | ALL: __YES, NO    | ESP: __NO<br>HPS: __NO<br>PCP: __NO      |
| SET TO YES IF A PCM3718 EXTENDED ANALOG INPUT BOARD HAS BEEN INSTALLED. THIS ALLOWS ACCESS TO THE EXTRA CHANNELS. USE MENUS 800 TO 813 FOR ALL SETTINGS OF INPUTS. DO NOT CHANGE IF BOARD IS NOT INSTALLED.  |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                        |
| 850 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __1-1500     | ESP: __100<br>HPS: __1<br>PCP: __1       |
| THE NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER OF THE MOTOR IS ENTERED HERE FOR USE DURING VECTOR CONTROL MODE IT IS ALSO RECORDED FOR DISPLAY WITH THE SITE INFORMATION INCLUDED ON THE PRINTOUT WHEN THE CONFIGURATION IS PRINTED.   |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                        |
| 851 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __100-5000   | ESP: __1500<br>HPS: __460<br>PCP: __1500 |
| THE NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE OF THE VSD IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.   |                   |  |
| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                        |
| 852 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __1-1500     | ESP: __30<br>HPS: __100<br>PCP: __30     |
| THE NAMEPLATE AMPERAGE OF THE MOTOR IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.  |                   |  |

**Figure A-32: Menus 813 to 852****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                              | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|--|--|--|
| 853 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: _1000-5000                              | ESP: _3500<br>HPS: _3570<br>PCP: _3500 |
| THE NAMEPLATE MOTOR RPM IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.  |  |  |
| 854 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: _0-9999                                 | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _100<br>PCP: _0        |
| THE NAMEPLATE MOTOR SERIES IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.   |  |  |
| 855 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ESP: _20-120<br>HPS: _30-60<br>PCP: _20-120  | ESP: _60<br>HPS: _60<br>PCP: _60       |
| THE NAMEPLATE FREQUENCY OF THE MOTOR IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.                                       |  |  |
| 856 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: _1-2000                                 | ESP: _1<br>HPS: _100<br>PCP: _1        |
| THE PUMP HORSEPOWER IS ENTERED HERE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.  |  |  |
| 857 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: _0-999                                  | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0          |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE PRIMARY INPUT VOLTAGE OF THE OUTPUT TRANSFORMER FOR INFORMATION ONLY.      |  |  |
| 858 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ESP: _0-5000<br>HPS: _0-7000<br>PCP: _0-5000 | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0          |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE SECONDARY VOLTAGE OF THE OUTPUT TRANSFORMER FOR INFORMATION ONLY.          |  |  |
| 859 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: _0-10                                   | ESP: _0<br>HPS: _0<br>PCP: _0          |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE INPUT IMPEDANCE OF THE OUTPUT TRANSFORMER IN PERCENT FOR INFORMATION ONLY. |  |  |

**Figure A-33: Menus 853 to 859****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE                             | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                      |
|--|---|--|
| 860 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ESP: __0-10<br>HPS: __0-0<br>PCP: __0-10    | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE TRANSFORMER LOSSES IN PERCENT FOR INFORMATION ONLY.  |   |  |
| 861 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __0-20000                              | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAN ENTER THE TRANSFORMER TO MOTOR CABLE LENGTH FOR INFORMATION ONLY.  |   |  |
| 862 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ESP: __0-10<br>HPS: __0-9999<br>PCP: __0-10 | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE SIZE OF THE CABLE THAT IS RUNNING TO THE MOTOR FOR INFORMATION ONLY.                                 |   |  |
| 863 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __1-10                                 | ESP: __4<br>HPS: __4<br>PCP: __4       |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE KILOVOLT RATING OF THE CABLE TO THE MOTOR FOR INFORMATION ONLY.                                      |   |  |
| 864 EQUIPMENT MENU   | ALL: __0-500                                | ESP: __100<br>HPS: __100<br>PCP: __100 |
| BY USING THE KEYPAD YOU MAY ENTER THE DOWN HOLE TEMPERATURE OF THE WELL IF APPLICABLE FOR INFORMATION ONLY.                                |   |  |
| 900 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL: __0-9                                  | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0       |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY, DIRECT ACCESS TO THE VSD IS POSSIBLE. THIS IS DANGEROUS TO DO SINCE AN INCORRECT PARAMETER CAN DAMAGE THE VSD. |   |  |

**Figure A-34: Menus 860 to 900****Private**

| MENU # AND DESCRIPTION   | MENU ITEM RANGE   | MENU ITEM DEFAULT                                  |
|--|-------------------|--|
| 901 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL:__            | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                   |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY, DIRECT ACCESS TO THE VSD IS POSSIBLE.<br>THIS IS DANGEROUS TO DO SINCE AN INCORRECT PARAMETER CAN DAMAGE<br>THE VSD.   |                   |  |
| 902 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL:__            | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                   |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY, DIRECT ACCESS TO THE VSD IS POSSIBLE.<br>THIS IS DANGEROUS TO DO SINCE AN INCORRECT PARAMETER CAN DAMAGE<br>THE VSD.   |                   |  |
| 903 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL:__            | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                   |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY, DIRECT ACCESS TO THE VSD IS POSSIBLE.<br>THIS IS DANGEROUS TO DO SINCE AN INCORRECT PARAMETER CAN DAMAGE<br>THE VSD.   |                   |  |
| 904 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL:__READ, WRITE | ESP: __INVALID<br>HPS: __INVALID<br>PCP: __INVALID |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY, DIRECT ACCESS TO THE VSD IS POSSIBLE.<br>THIS IS DANGEROUS TO DO SINCE AN INCORRECT PARAMETER CAN DAMAGE<br>THE VSD.   |                   |  |
| 905 DIRECT ACCESS  | ALL:__0-9999      | ESP: __0<br>HPS: __0<br>PCP: __0                   |
| FOR EXTENDED DIAGNOSTICS A CODE SUPPLIED BY REDA MAY BE ENTERED<br>HERE WHICH ALLOWS THE 904 MENU TO PERFORM MEMORY WRITES TO THE<br>G3 DRIVE. THIS IS ONLY NORMALLY USED DURING FACTORY SERVICE.  |                   |  |
| 999 G3 SERVICE AND   | ALL:__            | ESP: __<br>HPS: __<br>PCP: __                      |
| FOR TRAINED PERSONNEL ONLY. THE DRIVE MUST BE STOPPED BEFORE<br>OPERATING ANY OF THESE TEST ROUTINES. THE DRIVE FUSES, BUS VOLTAGE<br>AND LOAD MUST BE REMOVED BEFORE TURNING ON 'SUPERUSER' MODE.<br>THE DRIVE POWER MUST BE CYCLED TO TAKE THE DRIVE OUT OF<br>'SUPERUSER' MODE. NOTE THAT THE DRIVE MAY DROP OUT OF 'SUPERUSER'<br>MODE IF A TRIP OCCURS. |                   |  |

**Figure A-35: Menus 901 to 999****Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## A.1 HMI Menus Index

The following figure provides a quick index to HMI menus numbers and gives a brief description of the menu function.

| 2.06 MENU NUMBERS                  |                                      |                                   |  |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 100 LANGUAGE                       | 200 PUMP TYPE (ESP / PCP /HPS)       | 500 ROCKING STARTS ENABLE         |  |
| 101 COMMISSION DRIVE               | 203 AC INPUT LINE FREQUENCY          | 501 NUMBER OF ROCKS               |  |
| 102 MASTER PASSWORD                | 204 BASE SPEED                       | 502 ROCKING STARTS FREQUENCY      |  |
| 103 CHANGE MASTER PASSWORD         | 205 POWER FAIL AUTO START            | 503 ROCKING STARTS METHOD         |  |
| 104 ACCESS SELECTION               | 206 POWER FAIL START DELAY           | 510 INPUT SPEED FORCE ENABLE      |  |
| 105 USER PASSWORD                  | 207 POWER LOSS AUTO START NUM.       | 511 INPUT SPEED FORCE FREQUENCY   |  |
| 106 CHANGE USER PASSWORD           | 208 TIMED AUTO START IN AUTO         | 512 INPUT FORCE AUX. INPUT NUMBER |  |
| 107 CONTROL TYPE                   | 209 TIMED AUTO START DELAY           | 610 AUX. INPUT SELECTION          |  |
| 108 AMPS DISPLAYED AND USED        | 212 STOP MODE                        | 611 DISPLAY ON SCREEN             |  |
| 109 MEASURED AMPS                  | 213 INTERNAL MAX TEMP                | 612 AUX. LABEL                    |  |
| 110 WELL I.D.                      | 214 INTERNAL MIN TEMP                | 613 AUX. SHUTDOWN ENABLE          |  |
| 111 VIEW HISTORY                   | 215 RESET INTERNAL TEMPS             | 614 AUX. ACTIVE WHEN              |  |
| 112 RESET USER RUN POWER ON TIMERS | 216 SET TIME                         | 615 AUX. IGNORE AT START          |  |
| 120 SPEED SOURCE                   | 217 SET DATE                         | 616 AUX. ACTIVATION DELAY         |  |
| 121 TARGET SPEED                   | 218 MOTOR / PUMP ROTATION            | 617 AUX. AUTO RESTART             |  |
| 122 MINIMUM SPEED                  | 219 TIME TO CLEAR RESTARTS HRS.      | 618 AUX. NUMBER OF AUTO RESTARTS  |  |
| 123 MAXIMUM SPEED                  | 240 PRINT CONFIGURATION              | 619 AUX. AUTO RESTART DELAY       |  |
| 124 SPEED RAMP HZ                  | 241 HISTORY EVENTS OR DAYS           | 700 FM TERMINAL SELECTION         |  |
| 125 SPEED RAMP TIME                | 242 NUMBER OF EVENTS OR DAYS         | 701 FM CALIBRATION SETTING        |  |
| 126 JUMP FREQUENCY 1               | 243 PRINT HISTORY                    | 702 AM TERMINAL SELECTION         |  |
| 127 JUMP BANDWIDTH 1               | 244 DATA LOGGING YES OR NO           | 703 AM CALIBRATION SETTING        |  |
| 128 JUMP FREQUENCY 2               | 245 DATA LOGGING INTERVAL            | 800 ANALOG INPUT SELECTION        |  |
| 129 JUMP BANDWIDTH 2               | 246 DATA LOG EVENTS OR DAYS          | 801 ANALOG DISPLAY ON SCREEN      |  |
| 130 JUMP FREQUENCY 3               | 247 NUMBER OF EVENTS OR DAYS         | 802 ANALOG LABEL                  |  |
| 131 JUMP BANDWIDTH 3               | 248 PRINT DATA LOG                   | 803 ANALOG SHUTDOWN ENABLE        |  |
| 140 TARGET CURRENT                 | 250 GRAPH ITEM                       | 804 ANALOG IGNORE AT START        |  |
| 141 MINIMUM CURRENT                | 251 GRAPH NUMBER OF DAYS BACK        | 805 ANALOG ACTIVATION DELAY       |  |
| 142 MAXIMUM CURRENT                | 252 GRAPH FULL SCALE HEIGHT          | 806 ANALOG AUTO RESTART           |  |
| 143 UC IGNORE AT START UP          | 253 START STOP GRAPH PRINTING        | 807 ANALOG AUTO RESTART NUMBER    |  |
| 144 UC ACTIVATION DLY              | 261 DATA LOG PAR. #1 SELECTION       | 808 ANALOG AUTO RESTART DELAY     |  |
| 145 UC AUTO START                  | 262 DATA LOG PAR. #2 SELECTION       | 809 ANALOG HIGH LIMIT TRIP        |  |
| 146 UC AUTO START DLY              | 263 DATA LOG PAR. #3 SELECTION       | 810 ANALOG LOW LIMIT TRIP         |  |
| 147 UC AUTO START NUMBERS          | 320 RELAY #1 ASSIGNMENT              | 811 ANALOG CALIBRATION METHOD     |  |
| 148 CURRENT RAMP HZ                | 321 RELAY #2 ASSIGNMENT              | 812 ANALOG INPUT HIGH VALUE       |  |
| 149 CURRENT RAMP SECONDS           | 322 RELAY #3 ASSIGNMENT              | 813 ANALOG INPUT LOW VALUE        |  |
| 150 DC ACTIVATION DELAY            | 323 RELAY #4 ASSIGNMENT              | 820 EXTENDED ANALOG INPUT CARD    |  |
| 151 TRACKING UL ENABLE             | 330 RELAY O/P #1 ON TIME & DURATION  | 850 MOTOR NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER    |  |
| 152 TRACKING UL DEVIATION %        | 331 RELAY O/P #1 OFF TIME & DURATION | 851 MOTOR NAMEPLATE VOLTAGE       |  |
| 160 TARGET PRESSURE                | 332 RELAY O/P #2 ON TIME & DURATION  | 852 MOTOR NAMEPLATE CURRENT       |  |
| 161 MINIMUM PRESSURE               | 333 RELAY O/P #2 OFF TIME & DURATION | 853 MOTOR NAMEPLATE RPM           |  |
| 162 MAXIMUM PRESSURE               | 334 RELAY O/P #3 ON TIME & DURATION  | 854 MOTOR NAMEPLATE SERIES        |  |
| 163 PRESSURE INPUT                 | 335 RELAY O/P #3 OFF TIME & DURATION | 855 MOTOR NAMEPLATE FREQUENCY     |  |
| 164 SPEED UP OR DOWN WITH PSI INC. | 336 RELAY O/P #4 ON TIME & DURATION  | 856 PUMP HORSEPOWER               |  |
| 165 PRESSURE RAMP HZ               | 337 RELAY O/P #4 OFF TIME & DURATION | 857 TRANSFORMER PRIMARY VOLTAGE   |  |
| 166 PRESSURE RAMP SECONDS          | 340 SCADA ACCESS                     | 858 TRANSFORMER SECONDARY VOLTAGE |  |
| 167 UNDER PRESS SHUTDOWN ENABLE    | 341 SCADA ADDRESS                    | 859 TRANSFORMER IMPEDANCE         |  |
| 168 UNDER PRESS IGNORE AT START    | 342 SCADA BAUD RATE                  | 860 TRANSFORMER LOSSES %          |  |
| 169 UNDER PRESS ACTIVE DELAY       | 343 SCADA DATA MODE                  | 861 CABLE LENGTH IN FEET          |  |
| 170 UNDER PRESS AUTO RESTART       | 344 SCADA PROTOCOL                   | 862 CABLE SIZE WIRE GAUGE         |  |
| 171 UNDER PRESS AUTO START NUM.    | 345 SCADA BROADCAST                  | 863 CABLE RATING KV               |  |
| 172 UNDER PRESS START TYPE         | 346 DATA TRANSFER                    | 864 DOWNHOLE TEMP                 |  |
| 173 UNDER PRESS AUTO START PRESS.  | 347 WIN 2000 HYPERTERM UPGRADE ONLY  | 900 DIRECT BANK                   |  |
| 174 UNDER PRESS START DELAY        | 450 PWM CARRIER FREQUENCY            | 901 DIRECT ADDRESS                |  |
| 175 PRESS DELAY INCREMENT          | 451 STALL PROTECTION ENABLE          | 902 DIRECT MASK                   |  |
| 176 OVER PRESS SHUTDOWN ENABLE     | 452 STALL THRESHOLD % OF VFD         | 903 DIRECT DATA                   |  |
| 177 OVER PRESS IGNORE DELAY        | 454 CATCH A SPINNING MOTOR ENABLE    | 904 DIRECT COMMAND                |  |
| 178 OVER PRESS ACTIVE DELAY        | 455 BASE FREQ. VOLTAGE SELECT        | 905 DIRECT WRITE CODE             |  |
| 179 OVER PRESS AUTO START          | 456 MAX BASE FREQ. VOLTS             | 999 G3 SERVICE ROUTINES           |  |
| 180 OVER PRESS START NUM.          | 458 START UP FREQ. HZ                |                                   |  |
| 181 OVER PRESS START TYPE          | 459 START UP VOLTAGE BOOST %         |                                   |  |
| 182 PID CONTROL                    | 460 VHZ PATTERN                      |                                   |  |
| 183 PID PROPORTIONAL               | 461 VECTOR CONTROL MOMENT OF INERTIA |                                   |  |
| 184 PID INTEGRAL                   | 462 NUMBER OF MOTOR POLES            |                                   |  |
| 185 PID DERIVATIVE                 | 470 STARTING ACCELL RATE HZ          |                                   |  |
|                                    | 471 STARTING ACCELL SECONDS          |                                   |  |
|                                    | 472 MIN TO TARGET ACCELL RATE HZ     |                                   |  |
|                                    | 473 MIN TO TARGET ACCELL SECONDS     |                                   |  |
|                                    | 474 STOP DECELL RATE                 |                                   |  |
|                                    | 475 STOP DECELL SECONDS              |                                   |  |

Figure A-36: HMI Menus Index

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

# Electrical Drawings

Intentionally Blank

## B ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

This appendix contains circuit diagrams, schematics, and other electrical engineering file documents required to install and maintain VSDs or SWDs.

Intentionally Blank

## Reference Material

|            |  |       |             |
|------------|--|-------|-------------|
| <b>C.1</b> | <b>Harmonics Concerns with VSDs</b>            | _____ | <b>C- 1</b> |
| C.1.1      | Harmonics Worksheet                            | _____ | C- 1        |
| <b>C.2</b> | <b>HMI Software Version 2.06 Release Notes</b> | _____ | <b>C- 4</b> |
| C.2.1      | Additions                                      | _____ | C- 4        |
| C.2.2      | Enhancements                                   | _____ | C- 5        |
| C.2.3      | Corrections                                    | _____ | C- 6        |
| <b>C.3</b> | <b>ROM Versions and History</b>                | _____ | <b>C- 7</b> |
| <b>C.4</b> | <b>Problem Information Sheet</b>               | _____ | <b>C- 8</b> |

Intentionally Blank

**Private**

[Copyright](#) © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.

## C REFERENCE MATERIAL

This appendix contains documents that do not readily belong in the main chapters of the manual. Often, newly released information will be included in reference material before being incorporated to the main manual chapters.

### C.1 Harmonics Concerns with VSDs

This section contains a worksheet (questionnaire) for the installer or troubleshooter to use should a problem arise or be suspected due to harmonics problems being created by VSD loads. Please answer each question as completely as possible and then contact Artificial Lift InTouch for support.

#### C.1.1 Harmonics Worksheet

Please answer the following questions as completely as possible. This information will be used to run a computer simulation of your drive application to generate an estimate of the harmonic levels produced by any VSD loads. If some of the questions cannot be answered, some assumptions will be made about the system. Refer to the drawing(s) included in this manual and the drive cabinet for complete system details. When the questions below are completed, contact Artificial Lift InTouch for assistance.

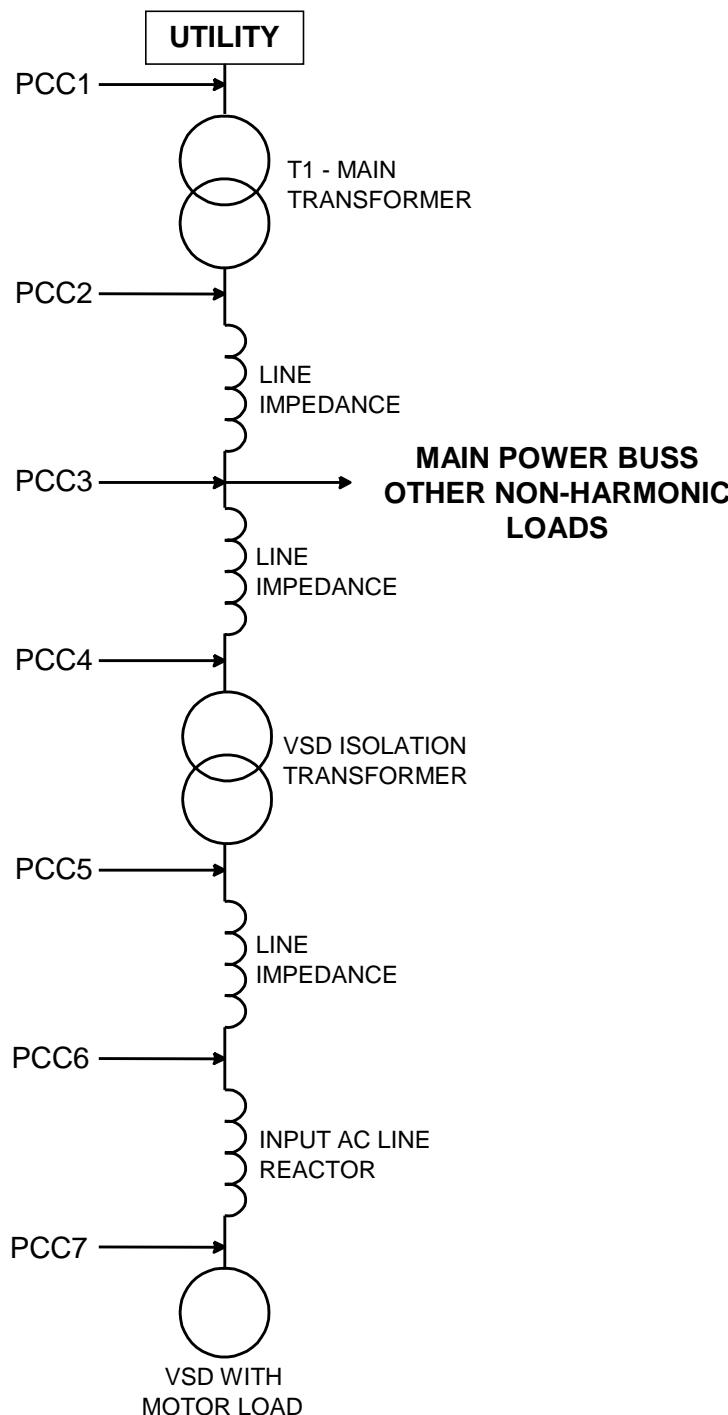


##### Note

In the questions below, PCC refers to common point(s) of coupling on the following figure.

1. What is the utility input voltage and frequency to the main transformer (PCC) ? \_\_\_\_\_ Volts
2. What is the utility system short circuit duty amperage ( $I_{sc}$ ) immediately before the main transformer for the facility (PCC1)? \_\_\_\_\_ Amps (*this is optional - provided by the utility - required only if PCC1 is the PCC of concern*)
3. What is the main transformer (T1) \_\_\_\_\_ kVA? and the percent impedance? \_\_\_\_\_ %
4. What is the impedance ratio of the main transformer (T1) \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_? (*Inductance : Resistance - Typically 10:1 for large transformer, ratios higher than 10:1 will have negligible impact on results*)

5. What is the bus fault current ( $I_{sc}$ ) after the main transformer (at PCC2)?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Amps
6. What is the main bus voltage of the (secondary of the main transformer T1)?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Volts
7. What is the inductance or distance of the power line from the main transformer (PCC2) to the main plant power bus (PCC3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?
8. What is the inductance or distance of the power line from the main plant bus (PCC3) to the VSD isolation transformer \_\_\_\_\_ ?
9. What is the VSD isolation transformer (T2) kVA and % impedance?  
\_\_\_\_\_ kVA \_\_\_\_\_ % (*transformer directly before the VSD*)
10. What is the impedance ratio of the input transformer (T2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*(Inductance : Resistance - Typically 10:1 for large transformer, ratios higher than 10:1 will have negligible impact on results)*
11. Is an AC line reactor going to be used? \_\_\_\_\_ (YES / NO) If so, what is the impedance or reactance in microHenries? \_\_\_\_\_ uH
12. What is the system's nominal fundamental (other non— harmonic) load current on the main power bus? \_\_\_\_\_ Amps
13. Are there other VSDs in the system? If so, how many? All information on the transformer associated with these VSDs must be supplied.
14. Are there any other harmonic on the system that need to be considered in this calculation? If so, please give the values of these harmonics.
15. What is the point of common coupling for the harmonics measurements (PCC 1-7)? Refer to [Figure C-1 VSD Points of Common Coupling](#).



**Figure C-1: VSD Points of Common Coupling.** In this diagram, PCCs listed on the left identify common points of coupling.

## C.2 HMI Software Version 2.06 Release Notes

This section describes the additions, enhancements, and revisions included in the version 2.06 release of the HMI software. Please ensure that your HMI contains the latest software update. Refer to InTouch for the latest HMI software revision.

### C.2.1 Additions

- Russian language and Russian language support has been added. Selection is available in Menu 100.
- Type 255 Reset option was added to Menu 999. This reset is required when changing the VSD ROM and also should be performed when replacing the G3 Controller Board.
- Short Circuit check is turned OFF in the G3 during HMI initialization. This should prevent starting problems on VSDs equipped with an output filter.
- Added Control of the FM and AM terminals on the G3 Terminal Board in Menus 700 through 704. These terminals provide analog outputs. The default selections are Output Frequency and Output Amps. Other selections are available as outlined in the Help text and the G3 Tosvert Manual (InTouch Content ID#).
- Relay Timer Modification
  - Added Time of Day and Absolute Time selections for Relay Output control. The extra selections are available in Menus 320-323. The Time Settings are available in Menus 330-337.
  - Time of Day: Relay will activate at the time entered in the Relay ON Time, which is entered in Menus 330, 332, 334 or 336. The Relay will de-activate at the time entered in Relay OFF Time, Menus 331, 333, 335 or 337.
  - Absolute Time: In this mode the Relay continuously alternates from activated to de-activated base on the ON and OFF Duration time settings in Menus 330-337. Menus 330, 332, 334 or 336 establish the time duration that the relay will remain activated. Menus 331, 333, 335 or 337 establish the time duration that the relay will remain de-activated. The timers are absolute and are not synchronized with the time of day or other drive activity.

- Win 2000 Upgrade Mod added for Win 2000 file transfer. Future upgrades will use the Hyperterminal application in the standard Schlumberger OPS Pack-equipped PCs.

## C.2.2 Enhancements

- Current Update Mod-The amps value is updated more frequently and will have a resolution of 0.2% of VSD rated amps. Previously, the amps value had a resolution of 1%, which resulted in large step changes, especially in larger drives. There will still be a step change but it has been reduced to 0.2 %.
- DataLog Mod-Changed DataLog to allow the user to select the parameters to be logged. The selections are made in Menus 261, 262, and 263. Previously, the parameters logged were set to Frequency, Amps, and Pressure input only. This version allows the user to select: *MEASURED CURRENT, FREQUENCY OUTPUT, PRESSURE INPUT, HMI TEMPERATURE, VSD OUTPUT CURRENT, OUTPUT VOLTAGE, POWER OUTPUT, SCALED ANALOG INPUTS.*
- Configuration Printout Mod-Added *Catch a Spinning Motor* setting to the *Configuration* printout. Added the VSD/Motor Amps selection from Menu 108 and the conversion factor used to calculate the Motor Amps Value. Added Menu numbers to most settings on the *Configuration* printout to help simplify accessing the settings.
- Modbus Mod-SCADA settings can be changed while being polled and changes will take effect immediately. Previously, there were occasional delays or lock-ups when changing the SCADA Access Level (Menu 340) and SCADA ID (Menu 341). Now they can be changed regardless of poll rates. Also corrected Address 109 to reflect Run/Stop status of the drive. When read, it will return a 1 if drive is running and a 0 if the drive is stopped. Added parameters are accessible via the SCADA link. Additions are: VSD/Motor Amps Selection, VSD Output Voltage, VSD Output Power, HMI Temperature, Broadcast acceptance, Underload Ignore Delay, Underload Activation Delay and Overcurrent Activation Delay.
- Default Changes: Underload Ignore and Activation timers default settings were changed to 1 minute. Previously defaulted to 1 second. Track Underload Enable (Menu 151) and Catch a Spinning Motor (Menu 454) are now defaulted to NO. Be sure to reset these features to YES if they are being used. Start Frequency (Menu 458) default has been corrected to 7.0 Hz when VSD is commissioned. Previously recommissioning the drive would set the start frequency to 1.0 Hz.
- Overcurrent Mod —The amps value is now saved in the *History* when an HMI-initiated overcurrent trip occurs.

- AI Scan Mod-Scan rate for the analog inputs has been increased to improve update time. Software filtering has been added to reduce spurious readings on noisy signals.
- Earth Fault and ROM Mod-Earth Fault trip level has been increased to prevent nuisance trips. This setting is not a user-settable parameter. Corrected the VSD ROM display to show the ROM revision level currently installed on the G3 Controller Board. Previously showed 5121 regardless of the ROM installed.

### C.2.3 Corrections

- Overload Setting-The G3 Overload mode setting is set during initialization at power-up. This negates the need for Field Service Bulletin 136, which outlines a manual method of setting the Motor Overload Mode.
- VSD Communications-Multiple changes were made to vastly improve VSD Communications stability. Changed communications to allow for occasional No Response error from G3 with shutting down the drive. This should reduce nuisance trips on VSD communications errors. Added error checking to the HMI/G3 communication link to verify transfer of data. This stabilizes communication and will eliminate the possibility of accepting spurious data. Corrected the error which caused VSD communication errors to be logged as “VSD Stopped due... Communication Error” when the drive did not actually stop. The HMI verifies each exchange with the G3 Controller Board. If an error is detected, it will be logged to the History file to document the occurrence and assist in troubleshooting.
- ST-CC Open Mod-Corrected the error that caused the drive to stop without the HMI interpreting this as a stop. Now the drive correctly trips with the message *VSD stopped due to ST-CC Open*. This contact, located on the G3 Termination Board may be used as an Emergency stop.
- Save Settings Mod-Hand/Off/Auto mode is saved immediately upon any change. Configuration data is saved 30 seconds after any change. Previously the user was required to press Menu/Esc twice to ensure the Hand/Off/Auto state and configuration changes were saved. While this action will still force a save of data, it is not required.
- Type 3 Reset Mod —Corrected a timing error that resulted in the maximum frequency in the G3 to be left at default setting when a Type 3 Reset was activated.
- Rocking Start Mod-Rocking Start Enable, Menu 500, was changed to a one-shot operation. The enable flag is forced back to NO after each start. This prevents accidentally leaving the Rocking Start feature activated.

- AI Test Mod-This change is transparent to the user. It corrects a condition that could cause the HMI to fail to boot if the analog input circuitry has a problem.
- Password Boot Lock Mod-If a Password lock has been enabled, the HMI will power up in the locked condition. Previously, the HMI would boot unlocked for 30 minutes.
- Restart Display Mod-Corrected error in display of the Restart timer countdown when in excess of 9 hours.
- Underload Help Mod-Corrected help text for the *Underload Ignore* and *Activation* timers. Previously, the text incorrectly stated that the VSD must be in Auto mode in order for timers to function. Only the Restart parameters require an Auto mode setting.

### C.3 ROM Versions and History

This section contains a table that lists all available ROM versions and describes the VSD and SWD versions with which they are compatible.

| Version | Description/History  | Effective Date |
|---------|--|----------------|
| V7000   | Probably not applicable to any active drives.  | 12/5/97        |
| V7001   | Changed to facilitate a communication match for compatibility with the HMI.  | 12/24/97       |
| V7002   | Added typeforms for 518 kVA drives and larger. If an older ROM was installed in such a drive, a typeform error would display, but there were no problems with the drive.                       | 5/22/98        |
| V7003   | Changed software to implement DC Bus voltage detection. In very rare cases (high harmonic content) the MS1 contactor would open and reset. This problem was reported by a distributor of VSDs. | unknown        |
| V7004   | Never implemented. This rev would have enabled 1400 kVA capability.  | unknown        |
| V7005   | Never implemented. Was to add new defaults that HMI usually makes for use with W992.   | unknown        |

| Version | Description/History   | Effective Date |
|---------|---|----------------|
| V7006   | Added 1400 kVA capability plus ground fault alarm function.   | unknown        |
| V7007   | Implemented recently to add 230 V functionality for Carrier Corp. No shipments of this ROM have been made to Schlumberger to date. As of 2/12/2003 existing ROM stock still being shipped. New p/n is 53909 (v7007). Part number 52796 (v7006) is now obsolete. | 2/12/2003      |

**i Note**

Any newer ROM versions are backward compatible with previous ROM versions. To obtain the latest ROM version, order SLB part number 7012529.

C.4

## Problem Information Sheet

The Problem Information Sheet provided here is a reprint from the Troubleshooting chapter of this manual. It is provided for the field user to have photocopying capability for additional sheets to provide to field service personnel.

**VSD Application Data/Problem Information Sheet (p. 1 of 2)**

| Item             | Application Data                 |                |                                    |                       |                               |               |                   |
|------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Application Data | Customer and Well ID Information |                |                                    |                       |                               |               |                   |
|                  | Installation Info                | New?           | Running?                           | Restart after outage? |                               | Other         |                   |
|                  | VSD S/N                          | VSD Size (kVA) |                                    |                       | NEMA 1 or NEMA 3?             |               |                   |
|                  |                                  | 6 or 12-pulse? |                                    |                       | Base Frequency:               |               | Software version: |
|                  | Input Transformer                | Mfr:           | KVA:                               |                       |                               | Impedance (%) |                   |
|                  |                                  | Primary volts: |                                    |                       | Secondary volts:              |               |                   |
|                  | Output Transformer               | Mfr:           | KVA:                               |                       |                               | Impedance (%) |                   |
|                  |                                  | Primary volts: |                                    |                       | Secondary volts:              |               |                   |
|                  | Filter                           | Mfr:           | Schlumberger P/N or detailed info: |                       |                               |               |                   |
|                  | Downhole Cable                   | Type and Size: |                                    |                       | Total Length (cable to motor) |               |                   |
|                  | Motor Nameplate Data:            | Motor 1:       | Series:                            | Hp:                   | Volts:                        | Amps:         | Hz:               |
|                  |                                  | Motor 2:       |                                    |                       |                               |               |                   |
|                  | Motor 3:                         |                |                                    |                       |                               |               |                   |
|                  | Motor Running:                   |                | Max Volts:                         | Max Amps:             | Max Hz:                       |               |                   |
| Pump Data        | Type:                            | # of stages:   | Series:                            |                       | Intake Type:                  |               |                   |
| Refer to         | Person in Charge                 |                |                                    |                       |                               |               |                   |

**Figure C-2: Application Data/Problem Info Sheet (p. 1 of 2)**

## VSD Application Data/Problem Information Sheet (p. 2 of 2)

|   |  |   |   |               |
|---|--|---|---|---------------|
| Contact(s)  | Person in Charge   |   |   |               |
|   | Address  |   |   | Telephone No. |
| Inverter Specification                                      | Test Number  |   |   |               |
| Optional or combinable equipment (SCADA, analog, digital):  |  |   |   |               |
| Delivery date<br>Time in service<br>Date when problem arose |  |   |   |               |
| Status of Use   | Motor Rating   | Poles:                                      | Horsepower:   | Voltage:      |
|   |  | Made by Schlumberger?<br>New?<br>Alternate? | Made by another company?<br>Number of units?<br>Continuous? | Hz:           |
| Ambient Conditions  | Indoor?  | Outdoor?                                    | Temperature Range?  |               |
|   | Humidity:<br>Dust composition and size:<br>Presence of salt and extent of corrosion from it:<br>Vibrations (in micrometers):<br>Presence of corrosive gas:<br>Availability of air conditioning:<br>Number of phases:   |   |   |               |
| Phenomenon  | Power Source   | Voltage between L1 phase and L2 phase:      | L11 and L21:  |               |
|   |  | Voltage between L2 phase and L3 phase:      | L21 and L31:  |               |
|   | State of motor when problem was found  | Voltage between L3 phase and L1 phase:      | L31 and L11:  |               |
|   |  | Number of Hz:                               |   |               |
| Frequency of problem  | Problem occurred      hours after motor had been started. Motor has been stopped for      hours.<br>Did problem occur during periodic inspection?<br>Did problem occur when motor was started?<br>Did problem occur during acceleration?<br>Did problem occur during deceleration?<br>Did problem occur while motor was not running? |   |   |               |
|   | First time?<br>Problem has occurred how many times?<br>Does problem occur every time the motor is operated?<br>When did problem first occur?   |   |   |               |
|   | Trouble indicator  | What was the LCD Screen Message:            |   |               |
|   |  |   |   |               |
| Detailed description of problem:                            |  |   |   |               |
| Temporary diagnosis and corrective action:                  |  |   |   |               |
| Date defective product shipped:                             |  |   | Shipped to:   |               |
| Deadline for repairs:                                       |  |   |   |               |

Figure C-3: Application Data/Problem Info Sheet (p. 2 of 2)

**Private**

Copyright © 2003 Schlumberger, Unpublished Work. All rights reserved.